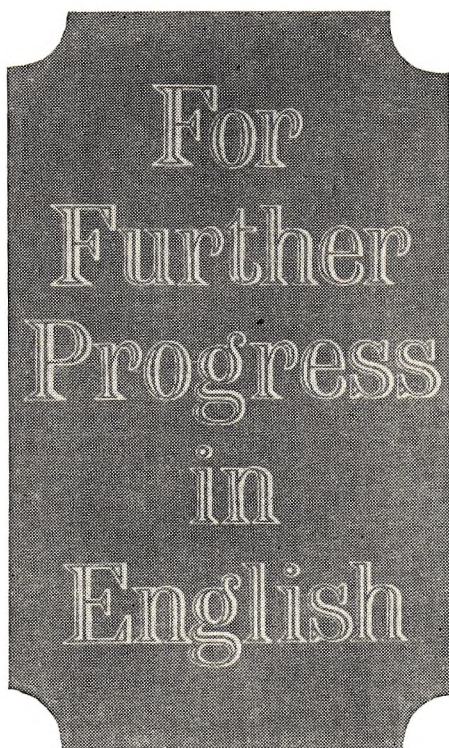


*T. V. Barishnikova, L. B. Belenkina,
T. G. Busurina*

For
Further
Progress
in
English



T. V. Barishnikova
L. B. Belenkina
T. G. Busurina



*(Английский язык:
второй этап обучения)*



ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «МЕЖДУНАРОДНЫЕ ОТНОШЕНИЯ»
Москва • 1974

*Татьяна Васильевна Барышникова,
Лора Борисовна Беленкина,
Татьяна Григорьевна Бусурина*

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК: ВТОРОЙ ЭТАП ОБУЧЕНИЯ

Редактор *М. А. Аполлова*. Издательский редактор *Н. П. Бычкова*. Оформление художника *А. Я. Толмачева*. Художественный редактор *Р. А. Казаков*. Технический редактор *И. Г. Крейс*. Младшие редакторы *Е. П. Политова, О. Г. Самсонова*. Корректор *Г. Г. Петропавловская*. Сдано в набор 15/III 1973 г. Подписано в печать 28/VI 1973 г. Формат 84×108¹/₃₂. Бумага тип. № 3. Печ. л. 6,0. Усл. печ. л. 10,08. Уч.-изд. л. 11,26. Тираж 70 000 экз. Изд. № 10—Ф. Издательство «Международные отношения» 103031, Москва, К-31, Кузнецкий мост, 24. Зак. № 213. Ярославский полиграфкомбинат «Союзполиграфпрома» при Государственном комитете Совета Министров СССР по делам издательств, полиграфии и книжной торговли. Ярославль, ул. Свободы, 97. Цена 39 коп.

Б $\frac{0714-025}{003(01)-74}$ 48—74

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Настоящее пособие предназначено для лиц, продолжающих изучение английского языка и овладевших следующим грамматическим материалом: система глагольных времен, инфинитив и инфинитивные обороты, причастие и его функции в предложении, простое и сложное предложение, прямая и косвенная речь, согласование времен*.

Объем ранее усвоенной лексики должен составить примерно 2500 слов.

Цель пособия — расширение словарного запаса студентов, овладение наиболее трудными моментами английской грамматики (причастные обороты, герундий и герундиальные обороты, сослагательное наклонение и модальные глаголы), а также дальнейшее развитие навыков устной и письменной речи.

Пособие состоит из одиннадцати уроков. В качестве текстов уроков использованы неадаптированные отрывки из произведений художественной литературы и публицистики: О. Генри, Д. Лондона, Э. Колдуэлла, К. Честертона, А. Крона, Г. Грина, Г. Уэллса, Д. Голсуорси, С. Моэма и Р. Фокса.

Тексты фабульные, легко поддаются обсуждению и могут служить материалом для различных видов работы с ними. Перед каждым текстом приводятся краткие сведения об авторе.

Структура урока

1. Грамматическая тема урока (образцы предложений с рассматриваемым грамматическим явлением).
2. Краткая биография автора.

* Данное пособие может быть использовано после прохождения курса "From Basic to Wider English" (Н. П. Богданова, Л. К. Валович, Н. А. Прилепская и И. И. Родиончева).

3. Текст.
4. Лексико-грамматический комментарий (Notes).
5. Список устойчивых сочетаний из текста, подлежащих активному усвоению (Word Combinations).
6. Активный словарь (Active Vocabulary).
7. Упражнения:
 - а) на активизацию лексики текста;
 - б) на словообразование;
 - в) на закрепление грамматического материала на базе лексики текста;
 - г) на многозначность слов;
 - д) по содержанию текста;
 - е) пересказ.

Кроме того, имеются обзорные упражнения (Revision Exercises) на пройденный грамматический и лексический материал.

CONTENTS

Lesson 1	7
<i>Text:</i> "Letters in the Mail" by E. Caldwell	
<i>Grammar:</i> Accusative with Participle I.	
Accusative with Participle II	
Lesson 2	19
<i>Text:</i> "The Adventure of the Dying Detective" by A. Conan Doyle	
<i>Grammar:</i> Nominative with Participle I.	
The Nominative Absolute Construction	
Lesson 3	35
<i>Text:</i> "The Ransom of Red Chief" by O. Henry	
<i>Grammar:</i> Gerund and Gerundial Constructions	
<i>Revision Exercises:</i> A. The Infinitive.	
B. The Participle.	
C. The Gerund	
	49
Lesson 4	52
<i>Text:</i> "The Quiet American" by G. Greene	
<i>Grammar:</i> The Subjunctive Mood. Model A	
Lesson 5	66
<i>Text:</i> "At the Theatre" by A. J. Cronin	
<i>Grammar:</i> The Subjunctive Mood. Model B	
Lesson 6	79
<i>Text:</i> "The End of the Story" by J. London	
<i>Grammar:</i> The Subjunctive Mood. Models A and B in Complex Sentences	
Lesson 7	91
<i>Text:</i> "The Mirror of the Magistrate" by G. K. Chesterton	
<i>Grammar:</i> The Subjunctive Mood. Model C	
<i>Revision Exercises:</i> The Subjunctive Mood	
	111
Lesson 8	114
<i>Text:</i> "The Fall of Edward Barnard" by W. S. Maugham	
<i>Grammar:</i> Modal Verbs must, to have (to), to be (to)	

Lesson 9	139
<i>Text:</i> "Acme" by J. Galsworthy	
<i>Grammar:</i> Modal Verbs need, should, ought	
Lesson 10	156
<i>Text:</i> "The First Men in the Moon" by H. G. Wells	
<i>Grammar:</i> Modal Verbs can, may	
Lesson 11	174
<i>Text:</i> "First Steps in Colonial Policy" by R. Fox	
<i>Grammar:</i> Modal Verbs will, shall	
<i>Revision Exercises:</i> Modal Verbs	190

Lesson 1

GRAMMAR: CONSTRUCTIONS WITH PARTICIPLES

A. Accusative with Participle I

1. "It's nice to see *children enjoying* themselves," said the mother. «Приятно видеть, как веселятся дети», — сказала мать.
2. We heard our new *neighbours moving* the furniture in their rooms. Мы слышали, как наши новые соседи передвигали мебель в своих комнатах.
3. She felt *the blood rushing* to her cheeks. Она чувствовала, как кровь приливает ей к лицу.
4. We found *them laughing* merrily at something. Мы застали (обнаружили, увидели) их, весело смеющимися над чем-то.

B. Accusative with Participle II

1. We must have (get) *the walls* of our room *papered*. Нам нужно оклеить комнату обоями (...чтобы нам оклеили...).
2. Where can I get *my watch fixed*? Где я могу починить часы?
3. I haven't had *my photo taken* for a long time. Я давно не фотографировался.
4. I want (to have, to get) *the letter posted* at once. Я хочу, чтобы это письмо было отправлено тотчас (Я хочу отправить...).

LETTERS IN THE MAIL

(by E. Caldwell)

Erskine Caldwell was born in Coweta County, Georgia, in 1903.

From the day of his birth until he reached the age of twenty, he rarely lived longer than six months in the same place. So life for him was a constant change of faces and surroundings.

While studying at the University he worked as a salesman, as an agent for the sale of plots in Alabama, played professional football, worked as a reporter.

He writes with frankness and humour about all he knows and feels.

In 1941, during the war, Caldwell was in the Soviet Union and remained in Moscow for a while as a correspondent.

His principal works are "Tobacco-Road" (1932), "God's Little Acre", "Kneel to the Rising Sun" (short stories, 1933), "Jackpot" (1940), "Trouble in July" (1940), etc.

As a general rule, almost everybody likes to receive mail, except bills and such things, and probably nobody in the whole town of Stillwater liked to get letters in the mail more than Ray Buffin. However, the fact was that Ray received fewer letters in his box at the post office than anybody else.

"Dog bite it!" Ray would say¹ with a sad expression on his long thin face when he took one more last look at his box and left the post office. At a time like that his whole tall bony body drooped with disappointment. "No mail again this time, but I've got a good feeling deep down inside of me that one of these days I'm going to get some."

It had been like that with Ray Buffin almost all of his life. He had no living relatives to write to him, and because he had an unyielding habit of paying cash for anything he bought in the stores, he received no letters from merchants or threatening notices from collection agencies.* On the other hand, however, once a month he did get a bill from the gas and electric company, and occasionally there was a letter from some candidate who was running for a political office. And, of course, since he had no kin to correspond with and did not know anybody outside of Stillwater, he had no cause to write a letter himself. The only exception had been once many years before — he had been about thirty years old at the time — when he had written a letter to a young girl in town telling her how much he admired her and saying how beautiful he thought she was. He had ended the letter by asking her to marry him, but he had not received a reply.

Like a great number of small towns along the Gulf Coast and elsewhere, Stillwater was not situated on a railroad and mail was received and dispatched only once a day.

* collection agencies эд. агентства по сбору налогов

At that afternoon time Ray Buffin always locked up his fixit shop,** where he made a living repairing radios and alarm clocks, and hurried across the tree-shaded square to the post-office. Getting as close as he could to his box, he would stand there anxiously watching the little glass window while Sid Stoney took his time about sorting and distributing the day's mail. A lot of people complained that Sid, who was a Republican, took too much time to sort so little mail, claiming that it could easily be done in fifteen or twenty minutes by a Democrat instead of half an hour or longer.

There was generally a loud hum of voices in the crowded room as people joked and gossiped while they waited, but Ray Buffin rarely said a word as he stood there hopefully watching until the last piece of mail had been distributed. Finally, when Sid Stoney opened the window with a loud slam, which was the sign that all the mail had been distributed, Ray would take one last look at his box and then walk slowly across the square with his thin face drooping with disappointment.

Two of the younger men in town, Guy Hodge and Ralph Barnhill, who were always thinking up pranks to play on people, got to talking one afternoon in the post office after watching Ray Buffin wait so hopefully for mail and decided that they would send him a letter signed with a fictitious name.

The way they planned the joke on Ray, they would tell everybody in the post office to watch Ray when he received a letter in his box, and then somebody would ask him in a loud voice if he had received a love letter from a girl. After that somebody would snatch the letter out of his hand and read it aloud for everybody to hear.

After buying a box of pink stationery at the drugstore, Guy and Ralph went around the corner to the telephone exchange, where Grace Brooks was the night switchboard operator.

Grace was a plump, bright-haired elderly girl who had worked for the telephone company since she had graduated from high school.*** She had remained single all those years, and because she lived such a lonely life, operating the switchboard all night and sleeping during the day, she was aware that there was little opportunity now for her to meet somebody who would be inclined to marry her.

At first, after Guy Hodge and Ralph Barnhill had told her what they were planning to do and had asked her to write the

** fixit shop (Am.) мастерская по ремонту

*** high school средняя школа

letter to Ray, because they wanted it to be in feminine handwriting, Gracie said emphatically that she would have nothing to do with the scheme.

"That's cruel," she told them, shaking her head. "I could never do a cruel thing like that."

"But it's only a joke, Gracie," Ralph tried to explain, "and it's all in fun. Everybody likes a harmless prank once in a while. And just think of the sight it's going to be when Ray gets a love letter on a pink paper from somebody named Myrtle or Jenny or Florence saying she has secretly admired him for a long time and can't conceal her feeling for another single day. That sad-faced look of his will disappear so fast that nobody in town will recognize him."

"No! It's too cruel!" She protested loudly, wiping a tear first from one eye and then from the other. "I wouldn't do a cruel thing like that for anything in the world."

"Come on, Gracie," Ralph pleaded. "Be a good girl and write the letter for us. We won't tell Ray or anybody else that you wrote it. He'll never know. You won't have to worry about that."

Suddenly turning around and hiding her face, Gracie tried to keep her eyes from filling with tears, but she was unable to keep them from streaming down her cheeks. It seemed like a life time since she had received a letter from Ray Buffin saying he admired her more than any other girl in the world and wanted to marry her. She had just graduated from high school then and had started to work for the telephone company, and, since she was girlishly carefree and had no thoughts about marrying any man at such a young age, she ignored the letter. During all those years they had seen each other occasionally, but rarely more than a polite greeting had passed between them, and each time she saw Ray he looked sadder and more lonely. In recent years there had been times when she wanted to run to Ray, throw her arms around his neck, and beg him to forgive her for not answering his letter. If she had answered his letter, they probably would have been married all those years and neither of them would be lonely now.

"Please, Gracie," Guy Hodge begged her. "If you don't we'll have to go find somebody else to write it."

"Don't do that!" she said quickly, wiping the tears from her eyes and cheeks. "I want to write it! I don't want anybody else to do it."

"That's the right spirit, Gracie," Ralph said, patting her on the shoulder. "I knew you'd like a good prank as well as

the rest of us. Now, let's see what you ought to say in it. I think you ought to tell him you've admired him a long time and that you'd like to become better acquainted with him. Then you could say that if he had no objections you'd like to see him as soon as possible and talk about a personal matter that would be of mutual interest. Let him think that what you really want is to get married. Then you can sign it with any name you want to."

"I think I know what to say," she told them with a quick nodding of her head.

After they left the telephone exchange, Gracie cried for a long time. Late that night she wrote the letter to Ray Buffin, and the next morning when she left the exchange, she mailed it in the letter box at the post office.

Guy Hodge and Ralph Barnhill were waiting in the post office that afternoon at four o'clock when Ray came in and stood in front of his box. By that time a larger crowd than usual had gathered in the post office and because everybody knew what to expect, there were knowing winks and nudges, but scarcely a word was said. Sid Stoney had not even begun to sort the mail that had arrived when Ray saw a letter in his box. His eyes blinking unbelievably, he stared at it through the little glass window for a long time. After that, with shaking hands he opened the box and took out the pink envelope. Turning it over in his hands, he went to the corner of the room to read it.

His hands shaking more than ever, he ripped open the pink envelope. As he began to read, the sadness of his long thin face vanished and he began to smile. After hurriedly reading the letter the first time, he began reading it a second time, his lips slowly and carefully forming the sounds of the words. When he finished, his eyes were blinking mistily and he quickly drew the palm of his hand over his face. Then, suddenly stuffing the letter into his pocket, he dashed out of the post office before anybody had a chance to say anything to him or stop him.

As soon as they realized what had happened, Guy and Ralph ran after him, calling to him to come back to the post office. Instead, Ray hurried around the corner to the telephone exchange. Ordinarily, Gracie Brooks did not come to work until six o'clock in the evening, but this time she had been there since four o'clock. When Guy and Ralph ran inside, Gracie was seated at the switchboard and Ray Buffin was standing close beside her with the widest and happiest smile they had ever seen on his face.

Evidently neither of them had yet said a word to the other, and apparently they were too excited to realize, or to care, that Guy and Ralph were in the office watching them. The little red and green lights on the switchboard began flashing urgently as phone calls remained unanswered and unconnected. Presently, Ray reached down and took Gracie's hand in his. She responded at once by snuggling her head against his shoulder while tears rolled down her cheeks.

Guy and Ralph backed out of the telephone exchange. Not a word was said until they got to the street.

"How in the world did that prank turn out like it did?" Ralph asked, puzzled. "I thought sure we were going to have a big laugh at Ray Buffin. I don't understand what happened. Do you suppose Gracie Brooks signed her own name by mistake?"

"She signed her own name, all right, and it's my guess it wasn't by mistake, either," Guy said soberly. "It looks to me like both of them have wanted to get married for a long time but were too bashful to do anything about it. I'll bet they never would have done anything about it if we hadn't thought up this letter-writing joke."

"I don't mind having a joke backfire once in a while," Ralph said, "but the next time we plan one, let's be sure it's going to work out the way it ought to. We don't want people to start saying we're too dumb to play a good joke any more."

"Somehow or other," Guy said, "I'm sort of glad it turned out the way it did. Every time I see Ray Buffin after this, I can think to myself that I did one good deed in life. If it hadn't been for us he never would have got the letter he must have been waiting for most of his life."

NOTES

1. ...Ray would say... ... Рэй, бывало, говорил...

Would is a modal verb here expressing a repeated, habitual action in the past (see Lesson 11).

WORD COMBINATIONS

to run for a political office выдви-
гать свою кандидатуру на выбо-
рах

to play a prank (trick) on smb.
подшутить над кем-л.

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **threatening** *a* угрожающий, грозящий
threateningly *adv* угрожающе
threaten *v* грозить, угрожать: *The father threatened to punish the boy for being so naughty.*
threat *n* угроза
2. **occasionally** *adv* изредка, время от времени; случайно: *We met occasionally after work.*
occasional *a* случайный, редкий: *He is an occasional visitor in our house.*
occassion *n* случай, возможность: *She has met the Browns on several occasions. on the occasion of: Let me congratulate you on the occasion of your marriage.*
3. **anxiously** *adv* озабоченно, с беспокойством: *"Is he running a temperature?" she asked anxiously.*
anxious *a* 1. озабоченный, встревоженный: *I'm anxious about his health.* 2. сильно желающий: *I'm anxious to see them.*
anxiety *n* беспокойство, тревога, опасение, забота: *We waited with anxiety for the doctor to come.*
4. **complain** *v* жаловаться (to кому-л., of на что-л.): *The child complained of a pain in the side. The workers complained to the manager of the hard working conditions in the pit.*
complaint *n* жалоба, недовольство; **to make a complaint** жаловаться: *I have no complaints to make.*
5. **claim** *v* 1. требовать: *His scientific work claims all his attention.* 2. претендовать: *Both countries claimed that territory.* 3. утверждать, заявлять: *He claimed to be a very experienced surgeon.*
claim *n* требование, претензия: *Their claim to the island is groundless.*
6. **sign** *v* подписывать(ся)
sign *n* 1. знак, символ; **to give a sign** сделать (подать) знак. 2. признак, примета: *Dark clouds are a sign of rain.* 3. вывеска (тоже signboard): *A big sign over the pioneer camp gate read: "Welcome to Our Camp."*
signature *n* подпись: *I can't make out the signature on this document.*
signing *n* подписание (документа): *The signing of the treaty took place after the conference.*
7. **acquaint** *v* знакомить; **to acquaint oneself with smth.** знакомиться с чем-л.: *You must acquaint yourself with your new duties. to be acquainted with smb.* быть знакомым с кем-л.: *I've often heard of Mr Brown, but I am not acquainted with him. to get acquainted with smb.* познакомиться с кем-л.: *I got acquainted with Nick just by chance.*
acquaintance *n* знакомство; знакомый: *"Miss Anderson happens to be an acquaintance of mine," he said to me. to make the acquaintance of smb., to make smb.'s acquaintance* познакомиться с кем-л.: *"When did you make the acquaintance of that man?" she asked. "I made his acquaintance at my sister's birthday party."*
8. **objection** *n* возражение, протест, неодобрение: *"Are there any objections to this resolution?" the chairman asked. to have (raise) an objection* возражать; **to raise no objection** не возражать
to object to smth. *v* возражать, протестовать против чего-л.: *"Sorry," she said firmly, "but I object to your smoking here."*
9. **respond** *v* отвечать, отзываться, реагировать (to на что-л.): *I expected them to respond to*

my remark at once, but they didn't.

response *n* ответ, отклик, реакция: *There was no response to the event in the paper.* **in response to your inquiry** в ответ на ваш запрос

responsible *a* 1. ответственный (to перед кем-л., for за что-л.): *Who is responsible for this work?* 2. важный, ответственный:

a responsible post. Ответственный: **irresponsible**

responsibility *n* ответственность; to take responsibility взять на себя ответственность; **on one's own responsibility** по собственной инициативе, на свой страх и риск; **to lay the responsibility on smb.** возложить ответственность на кого-л.

EXERCISES

1. a) Give Russian equivalents for the following.

1. His whole tall bony body drooped with disappointment. 2. He had an unyielding habit of paying cash. 3. He received no threatening letters from collection agencies. 4. He hurried across the tree-shaded square. 5. Gracie tried to keep her eyes from filling with tears. 6. The lights on the switchboard began flashing urgently as phone calls remained unanswered and unconnected. 7. I don't mind having a joke backfire once in a while.

b) Give English equivalents for the following.

выставлять свою кандидатуру на выборах, с шумом открыть окошко, сыграть шутку над кем-л., телефонная станция, телефонистка, незамужем, в шутку, безобидная шутка, похлопать по плечу, вскрыть конверт (разорвав его), сунуть письмо в карман, по ошибке, автобус ходил по расписанию, иметь отношение к чему-л.

2. a) Paraphrase the italicized parts of the sentences. Use the words and word combinations from the following list:

anxiety, anxious, to claim, to complain, fiction, fictitious, to get acquainted (with), to object (to), to have objections (to), response, to sign, to threaten, occasional

1. Several delegates *were against* that resolution. 2. They *met* the great artist at an evening party. 3. Besides books on science there were also some books of *novels and short stories* on Miss Gray's shelf. 4. The father *warned* the boy that he would punish him if he didn't stop teasing his sister. 5. At the mention of her son's name a look of *worry* appeared in her eyes.

6. Millions of people *put their names* under the peace appeal.
7. "Mr Small pays us only *rare* visits now that we live far from town," she said.

b) *Fill in the blanks with words and word combinations from the above list.*

1. This historical novel gives a good idea of the 17th century though most of the characters in it are ... 2. The old man ... to the doctor that he had bad headaches occasionally. 3. He said he had a good reason ... that plan. 4. In ... to our letter they sent us a new catalogue. 5. Both countries ... the long narrow straits between Sumatra and this peninsula as territorial waters.

3. *Translate into Russian, paying attention to the meaning of since.*

1. It seemed like a lifetime since she had received a letter from Ray Buffin. 2. Of course, since he had no kin to correspond with he had no cause to write a letter himself. 3. Since she was girlishly carefree and had no thoughts about marrying any man at such a young age, she ignored the letter. 4. Grace was a plump bright-haired elderly girl who had worked for the telephone company since she had graduated from high school. 5. "I need not introduce you to Mr Smith since you met somewhat earlier in the evening," said Holmes.

4. *Combine the sentences. Use Accusative with Participle I according to the model.*

Model: They saw Ray Buffin. He was hastily locking his fixit shop.

They saw *Ray Buffin* hastily *locking* his fixit shop.

1. People watched the mail coach. It was approaching the office. 2. Someone, walking a step or two behind, heard Ray Buffin. He was muttering something. 3. He stood close to his box, watching the postmaster. The latter was sorting and distributing the day's mail. 4. Turning round the corner I saw her. She was walking slowly, wiping tears from her eyes. 5. Stepping out of the post-office, Sid Stoney found the driver of the New Orleans bus at work. He was tossing out mailbags. 6. He watched the little red and green lights on the switchboard. They were flashing here and there.

5. *Form direct questions and answer them.*

1. I should like to know when you had your last photo taken. 2. I wonder where I can get my watch fixed. 3. Ask your friend when he is going to have his hair cut. 4. I wonder whether Jim has ever had his bicycle repaired. 5. Ask Nick where he has his linen washed. 6. I wonder whether she has got the letter sent.

6. *Translate into English.*

А. 1. Какова причина его тревоги? 2. Она жалуется на боль в ноге. Надо послать за врачом. 3. Когда состоится подписание контракта? 4. Пресса тотчас откликнулась на это событие, опубликовав ряд статей в центральных газетах. 5. Нам пришлось отказаться от нашего плана, когда мы услышали такие серьезные возражения. 6. Все смеялись, слушая, как они спорили из-за того, что их шутка «дала осечку». 7. Мы видели, как он читал письмо, написанное женским почерком. 8. Люди, ответственные за выполнение этой работы, должны присутствовать на конференции.

В. 1. Гай и Ральф хотели, чтобы письмо к Рэю было подписано вымышленным именем. 2. Я наблюдал, как телефонистка подключала разговоры (calls) и на щитке гасли и зажигались красные и зеленые огоньки. 3. В последние годы народы Африки, освободившись от колониализма, заявляют о своих правах независимых государств. 4. Когда администрация завода (management) пригрозила, что уволит этих рабочих, все рабочие объявили забастовку. 5. Ему хотелось, чтобы письмо было доставлено сестре как можно скорее. 6. Молодые люди застали на почте огромную толпу, наблюдавшую, как Рэй читает свое «письмо от возлюбленной».

7. а) *Translate into Russian.*

1. It is late already; I think we have worked enough and might *call it a day*. 2. He prefers *to call a spade a spade* and not to waste time on words. 3. "If you go on misbehaving like that," he said, "your friends are sure *to call you to account* for it." 4. The time appointed for the meeting was inconvenient for the participants and it had to be *called off*. 5. As the situation *called for* immediate measures, the Soviet Government *called on* both countries to settle their dispute in a peaceful way.

b) *Replace the italicized parts of the sentences by word combinations with to call.*

1. Why should you beat about the bush? Wouldn't it be better *to speak in plain terms*? 2. Let's have something to eat and after that let's *finish work*. I'm dead tired. 3. I think the boy who has played this trick on his comrades should be *reprimanded*. 4. When I arrived at the club I learned that the concert *had been cancelled* because the pianist had fallen ill.

c) *Translate into English.*

1. Выступая на собрании, он сказал, что он будет *называть вещи своими именами* и что Иванов — просто лентяй. 2. Этот вопрос *требует* внимательного рассмотрения. 3. Так как погода изменилась и пошел дождь, поход *был отменен*. 4. Выполнив заказы дня, мистер Денвер решил *кончить на этом*. Он привел в порядок мастерскую и пошел домой.

8. *Answer the following questions. Use Accusative with Participle I or Accusative with Participle II in your answers.*

1. What did Guy Hodge and Ralph Barnhill watch Ray Buffin doing at the post office?
2. Why did the young men want to have a letter written in feminine handwriting?
3. Why didn't Grace want the letter sent to Ray by anyone else?
4. Why had so many people gathered at the post office to watch Ray getting his love letter?
5. What did Guy Hodge and Ralph Barnhill find Ray Buffin and Grace doing at the telephone exchange?

9. *Retell the text according to the following plan.*

- a) Ray Buffin: his particular liking for receiving letters and the reason for it; the letters he received; the way he made his living.
- b) The post office during the hours mail arrived.
- c) Grace Brooks: her family standing; her education and work.
- d) Guy Hodge and Ralph Barnhill plan their prank on Ray Buffin.
- e) The way the prank worked.

10. *Use the following in situations of your own.*

It had been like that with ... all ... life.

The only exception had been once many years before when...

The way they planned the joke on ... was...

And just think of the sight it's going to be when...
It seemed like a lifetime since...
In recent years there had (have) been times when...
...had not even begun to ... when...
On the one hand, ... on the other hand, ...
To have nothing (something, a lot) to do with...

11. *Read and tell the joke.*

My son Kenneth went away to camp last summer, and actually managed to write one letter home. He was in the midst of composing it when another ten-year-old came up to him and peered over his shoulder.

"Writing home?" said the stranger.

Kenneth nodded.

The stranger thought this over. At last he said, "Mind making a carbon copy?"

12. *Render in English.*

Адрес неизвестен

В Федеративной Республике Германии обитает итальянский граф по имени Энрико ди Помпес. Недавно он решил испытать деловые качества (efficiency) западногерманских почтовых чиновников. Граф разослал 30 писем знаменитым немцам, имена которых давно уже стали достоянием истории.

И вот результаты импровизированной проверки. Письмо на имя астронома Кеплера вернулось из Регенсбурга со штампом: «Укажите (to indicate) улицу и номер дома». На конверте почтового отправления Иоганну Вольфгангу Гёте во Франкфурте-на-Майне чиновник вывел: «Адресат скончался», — и ... переслал письмо в музей Гёте. На конверте с адресом Фридриха Шиллера был поставлен штемпель: «Адресат неизвестен почтовому отделению № 7142 г. Марбаха».

Что касается Готтхольда Эфраима Лессинга, то, по сообщению чиновника, «Почтовое отделение № 3340 г. Вольфенбюттеля безуспешно разыскивало адресата, но не смогло обнаружить его, а посему просит впредь, во избежание задержки (delay) с доставкой корреспонденции, указывать улицу и номер дома». С аналогичной пометкой были возвращены письма на имя композитора Брамса из Гамбурга. Почтальон, кроме того, пометил на конверте: «Брамс, 1833—1897, жил не в Гамбурге, а в Вене».

В целом, по мнению графа, почта работает безукоризненно (irreproachably).

Lesson 2

GRAMMAR: CONSTRUCTIONS WITH PARTICIPLES

A. Nominative with Participle I

1. *Mr Brown* was seen *entering* his office at 9 o'clock. Видели, как мистер Браун входил в свою контору в 9 часов.
2. *They* were heard *discussing* the matter after the meeting again. Слышали, как они снова обсуждали этот вопрос после собрания.
3. From the balcony *the boy* was watched *running* in the direction of the post-office. С балкона наблюдали, как мальчик бежал по направлению к почте.

B. The Nominative Absolute Construction

1. *The weather being bad*, we could not go to the country. Так как (поскольку) погода была плохая, мы не могли поехать за город.
2. *All the guests having arrived*, dinner was served. Когда (после того, как) все гости приехали, подали обед.
3. *The conference over*, the ~~st~~udents went home. Когда конференция кончилась, студенты пошли домой.
4. The teacher spoke about the heroic defence of Leningrad, *the children listening to him with interest*. Учитель говорил о героической борьбе Ленинграда; дети с интересом слушали его.
5. The hunter was walking in the forest *with his dog running in front of him*. Охотник шел по лесу, а (причем) его собака бежала впереди.

THE ADVENTURE OF THE DYING DETECTIVE

(by A. Conan Doyle)

A. C. Doyle (1859—1930), the creator of Sherlock Holmes, was born in Edinburgh in the family of a civil servant.

In 1881 he received his Bachelor of Medicine degree.

Twice he went on long voyages as ship's doctor first to the Arctic on a whaler and then on a steamer bound to the West Coast of Africa. This gave him material for "Stark Munro Letters" and "The Captain of the Polestar".

Needing money badly to supplement a starving medical practice A. C. Doyle drew on his memories of Joseph Bell, a surgeon from Edinburgh Infirmary. So he invented a detective, Sherlock Holmes, and a comrade to join him in his exploits — Dr Watson.

"The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes" — each short story complete in itself — began to appear in *The Strand Magazine*. They were written during Doyle's business hours as an oculist waiting for patients who never came.

Eventually he abandoned medicine to devote his full time to writing.

Mrs Hudson, the landlady of Sherlock Holmes, came to my rooms and told me of the sad condition to which my poor friend was reduced.

"He's dying, Dr Watson," said she. "For three days he has been sinking, and I doubt if he will last the day. This morning when I saw his bones sticking out of his face and his great bright eyes looking at me I could stand no more of it. "With your leave or without it, Mr Holmes, I'm going for a doctor this very hour," said I. "Let it be Watson, then," said he. "I would not waste an hour in coming to him, sir, or you may not see him alive."

In the dim light of a foggy November day the sick-room was a gloomy spot, but it was that gaunt face staring at me from the bed which sent a chill to my heart.¹ His eyes had the brightness of fever and there was a flush upon either cheek. He lay listlessly as I entered the room, but the sight of me brought a gleam of recognition to his eyes.

"My dear fellow!" I cried approaching him.

"Stand back! Stand right back!" said he. "I know what is the matter with me. It is a coolie disease from Sumatra. It is deadly, and contagious by touch, Watson. Keep your distance and all is well."

"Good Heavens, Holmes! Whether you like it or not, I will examine your symptoms² and treat you for them."

"If I am to have a doctor, let me at least have someone in whom I have confidence," said he.

"Then you have none in me?"

"In your friendship, certainly. But after all you are a general practitioner with very limited experience. You can do nothing."

I was bitterly hurt.

"Possibly not. But I happen to know that Dr Ainstree, the greatest living authority upon tropical disease, is now in London. I am going this instant to fetch him."

I turned resolutely to the door.

Never have I had such a shock! In an instant with a tiger-spring, the dying man had intercepted me. I heard the sharp snap of a twisted key. The next moment he had staggered back to his bed, exhausted and panting.

"You won't take the key from me by force, Watson. Here you will stay. At six you can go. And now, Watson, there is one other condition that I would make. You will seek help, not from the man you mention, but from the one that I choose."

"By all means."

"The first three sensible words that you have uttered since you entered this room, Watson. I am exhausted. At six, we resume our conversation."

He appeared to be asleep. Unable to settle down to reading, I walked slowly round the room. Finally, I came to the mantelpiece. A litter of pipes, pen-knives, revolver cartridges was scattered over it. In the midst of these was a small black and white ivory box with a sliding lid. I had stretched out my hand to examine it more closely, when —

"Put it down! Down, this instant, Watson!"

His head sank back upon the pillow and he gave a deep sigh of relief as I replaced the box upon the mantelpiece.

"I hate to have my things touched, Watson. Sit down, man, and let me have my rest!"

The incident left a most unpleasant impression upon my mind. The violent and causeless excitement followed by the brutality of speech showed me how deep was the disorganisation of his mind. I sat in silence until the stipulated time had passed. He seemed to have been watching the clock as well as I, for it was hardly six before he began to talk with the same feverish animation as before.

"You will now light the gas, Watson, but be very careful that not for one moment shall it be more than half on³. Thank you. Now you will have the kindness to place some letters and papers upon the table within my reach. Thank you. There is a sugar-tongs there. Kindly raise that small ivory box with its assistance. Place it here among the papers. Good! You can

go now and fetch Mr Culverton Smith, of 13, Lower Burke Street."

"I never heard the name," said I.

"Possibly not, my good Watson. Mr Culverton Smith is a well-known planter of Sumatra, now visiting London. An outbreak of the disease upon his plantation, which was distant from medical aid, caused him to study it himself, with some rather far-reaching consequence. He is a very methodical person, and I did not desire you to start before six because I was well aware that you would not find him in his study. If you could persuade him to come here, I cannot doubt that he could help me. You will tell him exactly how you have left me — a dying and delirious man. Plead with him, Watson. There is no good feeling between us. His nephew, Watson — I had suspicions of foul play and I allowed him to see it. The boy died horribly. You will soften him, Watson. He can save me — only he!"

"I will bring him in a cab, if I have to carry him down to it."

"You will do nothing of the sort. You will persuade him to come. And then you will return in front of him. Make any excuse so as not to come with him. Don't forget, Watson."

I left him. Below, as I stood whistling for a cab, a man came on me through the fog.

"How is Mr Holmes, sir?" he asked.

It was an old acquaintance, Inspector Morton of Scotland Yard, dressed in unofficial tweeds.

"He is very ill," I answered.

He looked at me in a most singular fashion.

Lower Burke Street proved to be in a line of fine houses. My humble name and title did not appear to impress Mr Culverton Smith. Through the half opened door I heard a high, petulant voice.

"I won't see him, Staples. Tell him to come in the morning."

Before the apologetic butler had delivered his message, I had pushed past him and was in the room.

"I am sorry," said I "but the matter cannot be delayed. Mr Sherlock Holmes — "

The mention of my friend's name had an extraordinary effect upon the man. His features became tense and alert.

"What about Holmes? How is he?"

"He is desperately ill. That is why I have come."

I caught a glimpse of his face in the mirror over the mantelpiece. I could have sworn* that it was set in a malicious smile.

* I could have sworn... Я бы мог поклясться...

"It was on account of your special knowledge that Mr Holmes desired to see you. He has a high opinion of you, and thought that you were the one man in London who could help him, because of your knowledge of Eastern diseases."

"It would be inhuman not to answer his call. I will come with you at once."

I remembered Holmes's injunction.

"I have another appointment," said I.

"Very good. You can rely upon my being there within half an hour at most."

To my relief, Holmes had improved greatly in the interval. His appearance was ghastly as ever, but all trace of delirium had left him.

"Did you see him, Watson?"

"Yes, he is coming."

"Admirable, Watson! You can now disappear from the scene."

"I must wait and hear his opinion, Holmes."

"Of course you must. But I have reasons to suppose that his opinion would be very much more frank and valuable if he imagines that we are alone. There is just room behind the head of my bed, Watson."

Suddenly he sat up. "There are the wheels, Watson. Quick, man, if you love me! Don't speak! Don't move! Just listen with all your ears."

From the hiding-place I heard the footfalls upon the stair, with the opening and the closing of the bedroom door. Then, to my surprise, there came a long silence, broken by the heavy breathing of the sick man. I could imagine that the visitor was standing by the bedside and looking down at the sufferer.

"Can you hear me, Holmes?" There was a rustling, as if he had shaken the sick man roughly by the shoulder.

"Is that you, Mr Smith?" Holmes whispered. "I hardly dared hope that you would come. I appreciate your special knowledge."

"Do you know what is the matter with you?"

"The same," said Holmes.

"Ah! You recognize the symptoms?"

"Only too well."

"Well, I shouldn't be surprised, Holmes. Poor Victor was a dead man on the fourth day — a strong, young fellow. It was certainly, as you said, very surprising that he should have contracted** an out-of-the-way Asiatic disease in the heart of

** ...that he should have contracted... ...чтобы он подхватил...

London — a disease, too, of which I had made such a very special study. Singular coincidence, Holmes, of you to notice it."

"I knew that you did it."

"Oh you did, did you? Well, you couldn't prove it, anyhow."

I heard the laboured breathing of the sick man.

"Give me the water!" he gasped.

"You're near your end, my friend, but I don't want you to go till I have had a word with you. That's why I give you water. Can you understand what I say?"

Holmes groaned.

"Do what you can for me. Let bygones be bygones," he whispered. "Only cure me, and I'll forget it."

"Forget what?"

"Well, about Victor Savage's death. You as good as admitted just now that you had done it. I'll forget it."

"You can forget it or remember it, just as you like. I don't see you in the witness-box. Quite another shaped box, my good Holmes, I assure you. The fellow who came for me — I've forgotten his name — said that you contracted it down in the East End among the sailors. You are proud of your brains, are you not? You came across someone who was smarter this time. Can you think of no other way you could have got this thing? Can you remember any unusual incident in your life just about the time your symptoms began? Did anything come by post? A box by chance? Do you remember a box — an ivory box? It came on Wednesday. You opened it — do you remember?"

"Yes, yes, I opened it. There was a sharp spring inside it. Some joke —"

"It was no joke, you fool. Who asked you to cross my path? If you had left me alone I would not have hurt you."

"I remember," Holmes gasped. "The spring! It drew blood. This box — this on the table."

"The very one. And it may as well leave the room in my pocket. There goes your last shred of evidence."

Holmes's voice had sunk to an almost inaudible whisper.

"What is that?" said Smith. "Turn up the gas? Is there any other service that I can do you, my friend?"

"A match and a cigarette!"

I nearly called out in my joy and amazement. He was speaking in his natural voice. There was a long pause, and I felt that Culverton Smith was standing in silent amazement looking down at his companion.

"What's the meaning of this?" I heard him say at last.

"The best way of successfully acting a part is to be it," said Holmes. "I give you my word that for three days I have tasted neither food nor drink until you were good enough to pour me out that glass of water. Do I hear the step of a friend?"

There were footfalls outside, the door opened, and Inspector Morton appeared.

"All is in order and this is your man," said Holmes.

"I arrest you on the charge of the murder of one Victor Savage***," the officer said.

"And you might add**** the attempted murder of one Sherlock Holmes," remarked my friend with a chuckle. "Mr Culverton Smith, Inspector, was good enough to give our signal by turning up the gas."

"Stand still, will you?" said the inspector. There was the click of the closing handcuffs.

"A nice trap!" cried the high, snarling voice. "He asked me to come here to cure him. Now he will pretend that I have said anything which will corroborate his insane suspicions. You can lie as you like, Holmes."

"Good Heavens!" cried Holmes. "I have totally forgotten him. My dear Watson, I owe you a thousand apologies. I need not introduce you to Mr Culverton Smith, since you met somewhat earlier in the evening."

"It was very essential that I should impress***** Mrs Hudson with the reality of my condition, since she was to convey it to you, and you in turn to him."

"But your appearance, Holmes — your ghastly face?"

"With vaseline upon one's forehead and rouge over the cheek-bones a very satisfying effect can be produced, Watson. It was clear to me that by pretending that he had really succeeded in his design I might surprise a confession. That pretence I have carried out with the thoroughness of the true artist."

NOTES

1. It was that gaunt face staring at me from the bed which sent a chill to my heart. При виде этого-то (Именно при виде этого) изможденного лица на постели у меня похолодело на сердце.

*** one Victor Savage некто Виктор Сэвидж

**** ...you might add... ...вы могли бы прибавить....

***** ...that I should impress... ...чтобы я внушил (произвел впечатление)...

This is an emphatic construction. The part of a sentence requiring special stress is placed between **it is (was)** and **that (who which)**.

I re-entered Holmes's bedroom with a sinking heart.

It was with a sinking heart that I re-entered Holmes's bedroom.

2. I **will** examine your symptoms... Я хочу ознакомиться с вашими симптомами...

Will is a modal verb expressing wish, desire, determination, etc. (See also: "I will bring him in a cab...")

I **won't** see him. Я не хочу принять его (не приму его).

In the negative form **will** expresses stubborn unwillingness. (See another case: "You won't take the key ...")

3. ...not for one moment **shall** it be more than half on.
...чтобы ни на одно мгновение она не горела больше чем наполовину.

Shall here is a modal verb expressing prohibition.

WORD COMBINATIONS

with your leave с вашего позволения

within reach под рукой, в пределах досягаемости. *Ant.* **beyond reach** недосягаемо

foul play обман, мошенничество, ≙ дело нечисто

to make an excuse найти предлог

to catch a glimpse of smth. увидеть мельком что-л.

to have an appointment договориться о встрече

to have a word with smb. поговорить с кем-л.

let bygones be bygones забудем прошлое

to cross smb.'s path встать на чьем-л. пути (встать кому-л. поперек дороги)

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **sight** *n* 1. вид, зрелище: *It was a sight to see. Это было настоящее зрелище. (Это стоило посмотреть.)* 2. зрение; *in sight* в поле зрения: *There was no boat in sight.* *to lose sight of* потерять из вида: *I have lost sight of Nick since he left London.* *to catch sight of* увидеть, заметить: *In the corner of the hall I caught sight of a small picture that deeply impressed me.* 3. взгляд; *at first sight*

с первого взгляда: *He fell in love with her at first sight.* *to know by sight* знать в лицо: *I am not acquainted with him but I know him by sight.* *at the sight of* при виде: *At the sight of Mother's face I understood everything.*

sights достопримечательности; *to see the sights* осматривать достопримечательности: *I'd love to see the sights of this town.* Syn. *to go sightseeing.* 4. зрение

short-(near-)sighted *a* близорукий
long-sighted *a* дальнозоркий

2. **treat** *v* 1. лечить (for от чего-л.): *"I will examine your symptoms and treat you for them," said Watson.* 2. обращаться (с кем-л.); относиться (к кому-л., чему-л.): *They treated him as a child. She treated my words as a joke.* 3. угощать (to чем-л.): *Robert treated Jean to ice-cream.*

treatment *n* 1. лечение, уход: *After the treatment the patient was given at hospital, he felt much better.* 2. обращение: *His cruel treatment of the dog shocked us.*

treat *n* 1. удовольствие, наслаждение: *"My first visit to the theatre was a real treat for me," she said.* 2. угощение

3. **confidence** *n* 1. доверие; to enjoy smb.'s confidence пользоваться чьим-л. доверием; to take a person into one's confidence доверять кому-л. свои тайны; in strict confidence строго конфиденциально: *I'm telling you this in strict confidence, you must never speak of it to anyone.* 2. уверенность: *He answered all questions with confidence.*

confident *a* уверенный (of в чем-л.): *He felt quite confident of the successful outcome of the experiment.*

confidently *adv* уверенно

confidential *a* 1. конфиденциальный, секретный: *Father Cardi wanted the Gadfly to pass him some confidential information about the members of "Young Italy".* 2. доверяющий, доверительный: *How can you be so confidential with strangers?* 3. пользующийся доверием: *According to the reports he was their confidential man there.*

confidentially *adv* по секрету, конфиденциально

confide *v* 1. доверять, полагаться (in на кого-л.): *I know I can con-*

fide in him. 2. признаваться, сообщать по секрету (to кому-л.): *He confided his troubles to his friend.*

4. **deliver** *v* 1. доставлять, разносить; передавать, вручать: *to deliver a letter (a message, an order).* 2. произносить (речь), читать (лекцию): *He is going to deliver a few lectures on this subject.* 3. наносить (удар, поражение и т. п.): *In 1942 the Soviet troops delivered a decisive blow at the German fascists in Stalingrad.*

delivery *n* поставка, доставка, разноска (писем, газет); передача, вручение; the early (the first) delivery первая разноска (писем); special delivery срочная доставка, спешная почта

5. **relief** *n* облегчение (боли, страдания и пр.); утешение: *To his great relief the difficulties were overcome.*

relieve *v* облегчать, уменьшать (тяжесть, боль): *We did everything we could to relieve his pain.* to feel relieved чувствовать облегчение

6. **cause** *v* быть причиной, причинять, вызывать, заставлять: *The news caused great excitement among them.*

cause *n* 1. причина, основание, мотив, повод: *There is no cause for alarm.* 2. дело: *All peoples must unite to support the cause of peace.*

7. **persuade** *v* 1. убеждать: *We were persuaded that it was true.* 2. склонить, уговорить: *I persuaded him to accept that offer.*
Ant. dissuade

persuasion *n* убеждение; убедительность: *He had an exceptional power of persuasion.*

persuasive *a* убедительный: *Your arguments are quite persuasive.*

8. **account** *n* 1. счет, подсчет: *The manager was angry with*

the clerk because his accounts were not in order. to give an account of давать отчет в чем-л.; *to take into account* принимать во внимание, в расчет; *to call to account* призывать к ответу. 2. рассказ, описание, объяснение, доклад: *Give me a detailed account of your trip, it must have been very interesting.* 3. причина, основание; *on account of* вследствие, из-за: *The children are kept indoors on account of bad weather.*

account *в* 1. объяснять (for что-л.): *This accounts for his strange behaviour.* Этим объясняется его странное поведение. 2. отчитываться, отвечать (for за что-л.): *"You'll have to account to your father for every penny you spend," she said strictly.*

accountable *а* 1. ответственный (to перед кем-л., for за что-л.); подотчетный: *Bill is accountable to me for the work he does.* 2. объяснимый: *I think this phenomenon is quite accountable.* Ant. **unaccountable**

9. **imagine** *в* 1. воображать, представлять себе: *Imagine that you are flying to the moon.* 2. думать, предполагать, полагать: *I could not imagine he would ask me about it.* 3. догадываться, понимать: *We could not imagine who that man was.*

imagination *н* 1. воображение, фантазия: *You need imagina-*

tion to be a writer. 2. образ (мысленный): *She could not see anyone there. It was only imagination.*

imaginative *а* одаренный богатым воображением; образный

imaginary *а* воображаемый, нереальный: *It was an imaginary story of men fighting monsters.*

imaginable *а* воображимый: *They ran into the greatest problem imaginable.* Ant. **unimaginable**

10. **charge** *н* 1. обвинение: *The man was arrested on a charge of burglary. to bring a charge against* обвинить кого-л.: *The police brought a charge of murder against him.* 2. попечение, надзор: *The children were left in charge of a nurse.* 3. обязанность; ответственность; *to be in charge of* возглавлять, заведовать: *Mr Smith was in charge of that department.*

4. цена; *free of charge* бесплатно: *Children can get these books at school free of charge.*

5. заряд: *The wolf got the whole charge of the gun.*

charge *в* 1. обвинять (with в чем-л.): *He was charged with murder.* 2. поручать, вверять: *He was charged with an important mission.* 3. назначать цену (for на что-л.): *What do you charge for it?* Сколько это стоит? 4. заряжать (оружие, аккумулятор): *The battery needed charging, that's why your radio would not work.*

EXERCISES

1. a) Give Russian equivalents for the following.

1. He lay listlessly as I entered the room but the sight of me brought a gleam of recognition to his eyes. 2. If I am to have a doctor, let me at least have someone in whom I have confidence. 3. I happen to know that Dr Ainstree ... is now in London. 4. He appeared to be asleep. 5. I hate to have my things touched, Watson. 6. He seemed to have been watching his clock as well as I, for it was hardly six before he began to

talk... 7. Lower Burke Street proved to be in a line of fine houses. 8. My humble name and title did not appear to impress Mr Culverton Smith. 9. It was on account of your special knowledge that Mr Holmes desired to see you. 10. There is just room behind the head of my bed, Watson. 11. It was certainly, as you said, very surprising that he should have contracted an out-of-the-way Asiatic disease in the heart of London. 12. It was very essential that I should impress Mrs Hudson with the reality of my condition, since she was to convey it to you...

b) *Find English equivalents for the following in the text.*

1. Сомневаюсь, доживет ли он до утра. 2. Я не могла больше этого выносить. 3. Возможно, вы не застанете его в живых. 4. Эта болезнь передается через прикосновение. Не подходите близко. 5. Я был глубоко обижен. 6. Он глубоко и с облегчением вздохнул. 7. Между нами нет любви. 8. Я заподозрил его в обмане (преступных действиях) и дал ему понять это. 9. Это дело отложить нельзя. 10. Голос Холмса понизился до почти неслышного шепота.

2. a) *Paraphrase the italicized parts of the sentences. Use words and word combinations from the following list:*

to account for, to catch sight of, cause, to cause, to charge, on a charge of, to confide, confidence, confident, confidentially, relief, to relieve, treat, to treat, treatment, to imagine, to persuade

1. "Take it easy, son! Really there is no *reason* to worry," Mother calmed me. 2. In the crowd I *noticed* a young girl whose face seemed familiar to me. 3. The medicine *removed* his pain and soon the sick man fell asleep. 4. This patient is under Dr Benson's special *care*. 5. John was *quite sure* that he would pass the test successfully. 6. Thank you for your singing, it's the greatest *pleasure* I've had for months. 7. In those times science could not *explain* this strange phenomenon. 8. They were said *to have been accused of* smuggling.

b) *Fill in the blanks with words and word combinations from the above list.*

1. Can you ... what life on our planet will be like in two hundred years? 2. Inspector Morton arrested Smith ... murder. 3. I am telling you all this quite You must not as much as ever breathe a word to anyone else. 4. In this hospital they ... heart diseases. 5. In the end we succeeded in ... him to take part in the performance. 6. He only made some hints, he couldn't

fully ... in her. 7. The woman sighed with ... at seeing the letter. 8. The failure of the democratic candidate running for the presidency ... great disappointment among his supporters.

3. a) *Add the prefix dis- to the following verbs and nouns and translate them into Russian.*

obey, organize, order, approve, arm, trust

b) *Add the prefix in- to the following adjectives and translate them into Russian.*

human, sane, audible, curable, sensible, attentive, capable, effective, complete, experienced, expensive, exhaustible

c) *Form verbs by adding the suffix -en to the following adjectives and nouns and translate them into Russian.*

soft, weak, short, sharp, black, straight, length, strength

d) *Translate the following compound adjectives into Russian.*

far-Eastern, far-off, far-away, far-seeing, far-sighted, far-famed, far-reaching, far-fetched

4. a) *Use Nominative with Participle I in place of Accusative with Participle I.*

1. We heard him confiding his troubles to his friends. 2. They watched him recovering after the shock. 3. Someone heard the doctor persuading the patient to undergo the treatment.

b) *Translate into English.*

1. Слышали, как раненый жаловался на боль в ноге. 2. Видели, как они подписывали этот документ. 3. Наблюдали, как Сид сортировал только что доставленную почту. 4. Видели, как он жестоко обращался с собакой.

5. a) *Translate into Russian.*

1. Ray Buffin having an unyielding habit of paying cash for anything he bought, collection agencies never sent him threatening notices. 2. The last piece of mail having been distributed, Ray stepped out of the post-office with his thin face drooping in disappointment. 3. Inspector Morton wearing unofficial tweeds, Watson could not at once recognise him in the fog.

b) *Change the following into simple sentences; replace the subordinate clauses by Nominative Absolute or Participle constructions.*

1. As soon as Watson mentioned his friend's name, the features of the man's face became tense and alert. 2. When Smith was persuaded to come and examine the patient Watson hurried back to Baker Street. 3. Since the patient's condition had improved in my absence, I sighed with relief at seeing him. 4. When the arrangements were over, he stepped into the hiding-place. 5. If the man imagines that we are alone, his talk will be much more frank and valuable. 6. After the confession had been made by Smith, the signal for action was given. 7. As the message was quite confidential, it was dispatched by special delivery. 8. As the message was quite confidential, no one, with few exceptions, had access to it. 9. Since the boys, as a rule, took no one into their confidence, they occasionally found themselves in difficult situations.

c) *Replace the Nominative Absolute Constructions in the following sentences by subordinate or independent clauses.*

1. The patient having been duly treated for his disease, his friends had no cause to be anxious about him any longer.
2. The treatment over, they were discharged from hospital.
3. The long-awaited book was published at last with the news of it causing excitement among the reading public.
4. With Dr Mitchell being just a general practitioner, the case remained unsolved for some time.

6. *Translate into English.*

1. Миссис Хадсон хотела, чтобы Шерлока Холмса осмотрели в тот же день. 2. Прибыв в дом миссис Хадсон, Уотсон застал своего друга умирающим от какой-то смертельной тропической болезни, привезенной с Суматры. 3. Холмс решил не доверяться своему другу, так как он хотел, чтобы Уотсон уговорил Смита прийти к нему. 4. Поскольку доктор Айнстри завоевал доверие своих друзей и пациентов как крупный специалист по тропическим болезням, Уотсон предложил, чтобы он лечил его друга. 5. Принимая во внимание, что Холмс был в тяжелом состоянии, Уотсон старался не спорить с ним. 6. Холмс вдруг заметил, что Уотсон смотрит на шкатулку из слоновой кости, лежавшую на камине. 7. Холмс хотел, чтобы зажгли газовую лампу и чтобы она горела только наполовину. 8. Когда ему сказали, что мальчики идут домой, он почувствовал облегчение. 9. Новость, опубликованная в газете, вызвала большое волнение среди читателей. 10. Выйдя из дома, Уотсон вдруг увидел инспектора Мортонa, стоявшего на углу. 11. Вы не знаете, кто возглавляет

этот отдел? 12. Я не могу представить себе, какой мы можем придумать предлог, чтобы не ходить туда. 13. Его непонятное поведение удивило всех. 14. Он просил нас не обращаться с ним, как с ребенком.

7. а) *Translate into Russian.*

1. That proposal was *turned down* at the meeting, as most of the students were against it. 2. He promised to come but he *has not turned up* yet. 3. His recent success at the contest *has turned his head*; now he does not seem to recognize his old friends. 4. Before taking a final decision he lay awake the whole night *turning the matter over in his mind*. 5. The frost that had suddenly set in *turned* the water in the pond *into* ice overnight. 6. That plant is known *to turn out* enough equipment to cover the needs of this branch of industry. 7. He *turned the pocket* of his coat *inside out* to see where the lining had been torn. 8. "Since I've got only one book you will have to read it *in turns*," said Mary.

б) *Replace the italicized parts of the sentences by word combinations with turn.*

1. After the reconstruction the plant *is producing* twice as much machinery as before. 2. He has not given us a definite answer yet, he *is still carefully considering* the matter. 3. Holmes *rejected* all Watson's attempts to examine him or to fetch a specialist. 4. In many fairy-tales people *are made* into animals.

с) *Translate into English.*

1. «Смотри, чтобы успехи не *вскружили* (не давай успехам *вскружить*) тебе голову, сынок», — сказал старик. 2. Все люди, *по очереди* выступавшие на суде свидетелями (to appear in the witness-box), описывали Смита как нечестного, злобного человека. 3. Этот смелый партизан обычно *появлялся* там, где фашисты меньше всего ожидали его. 4. В поисках билета пассажир даже *вывернул карманы наизнанку*.

8. *Answer the following questions; be sure to use Accusative with Participle I or with Participle II in your answers.*

1. Why did Mrs Hudson want Sherlock Holmes examined by a doctor without delay?
2. What was Watson going to do when he found his friend lying listlessly in bed with flushed cheeks?
3. What did Holmes shout as he saw Watson approaching his bed?

4. What was the reason why the sick man wanted an unknown doctor brought to him at all costs?
5. Why did Holmes want to have some papers placed upon the table and the ivory box raised with a sugar-tongs and placed among the papers?
6. What did Watson feel when he heard Holmes asking for a match and a cigarette in his natural voice?
9. *Use the words and word combinations in brackets to describe:*
 - a) the symptoms of the tropical disease (contagious by touch, can be easily contracted, deadly, to be delirious, to be panting, deep disorganization of one's mind, the brightness of fever)
 - b) Dr Watson's feelings during his visit to Sherlock Holmes (to be horrified, to have a shock, to send a chill to one's heart, to examine, to treat smb. for smth., to be a general practitioner with limited experience, to be bitterly hurt)
 - c) Mr Culverton Smith (a well-known planter of Sumatra, to make a special study of smth., to have a deep knowledge of Eastern diseases, a face set in a malicious smile, vindictive nature)
10. *Retell the text according to the following plan.*
 - a) Mrs Hudson informs Dr Watson of Sherlock Holmes's being ill.
 - b) Watson visits Sherlock Holmes.
 - c) Watson goes to fetch Culverton Smith.
 - d) Culverton Smith is tricked into confessing his crime.
11. *Tell the story.*

No Parking

Jack Jones left his office at 6 p. m. He had had a very busy day. When he got to the station there were thousands of people waiting, so the train was very crowded.

Glad of the fresh air, he walked from the railway station near his home, and in a few minutes reached the street where he had lived for many years. What he saw as he came round the corner made him very angry indeed.

"Can't you read?" he said angrily to the man who had just got out of a car right in front of the gate of Mr Jones' house, and he pointed to the "No Parking" notice that he had got a local builder to put in the front garden.

"No," said the man in an unpleasant manner. "I was never taught."

Mr Jones became angrier than he had ever been before. When he entered his house, Mrs Jones tried to calm him, but it was useless.

He changed into his working clothes, which he always wore when he was working in the garden, and went out to do some work.

He looked carefully at the well-made and neatly painted board that faced the street. It so clearly indicated that there was to be no parking outside his house. He remembered telling the painter to make it clear, so that it could be read quite easily by people as they drove by in their cars.

To make matters worse, the houses farther down the street had no cars parked outside them. This was because, a few weeks earlier, the police had fixed up a notice with the words "Police Notice — No Parking" in clear white letters on a bright blue background. Suddenly an idea started to form in his mind, and he began to see the possibilities of a scheme for clearing away these wretched cars that had been obstructing the front of his house, all day long, for many months now.

He didn't tell his wife about it, so that when he brought home a large flat parcel a few days later, she was very surprised. He changed into his working clothes, took the parcel with him, and went out into the garden.

A little while later he took his wife out to see what he had been doing. To her surprise she found that he had taken down the little black and white "No Parking" notice, and in its place was a new board painted bright blue with white lettering on it which said "Polite Notice — No Parking". Jack Jones was never troubled with cars parking outside the gate of his house again. It is a funny thing, but true, that people usually read what they expect to see. Hardly anyone noticed that it was a "polite notice" and not a "police notice".

Lesson 3

GRAMMAR: GERUND AND GERUNDIAL CONSTRUCTIONS

- A. 1. We insist on *sending* him there at once. Мы настаиваем на том, чтобы послать его туда немедленно.
2. They insisted on *being sent* there the following month. Они настаивали на том, чтобы их послали туда в следующем месяце.
3. Excuse me for *having given* you so much trouble. Извините меня за то, что я доставил вам столько хлопот.
4. He was proud of *having been awarded* a prize. Он гордился тем, что ему присудили премию.
- B. 1. *His being late* for the meeting made everybody angry. То, что он опоздал на собрание, рассердило всех.
2. I remember *this name being mentioned* in the last report. Я помню, что это имя упоминалось в последнем докладе.
3. We were surprised *at Helen's (her) being* so nervous. Мы были удивлены, что Элен так нервничает.
4. She does not know *about the guests' having arrived*. Она не знает о том, что гости приехали.

THE RANSOM OF RED CHIEF

(by O. Henry)

O. Henry (1862–1910), whose real name was William Sidney Porter, was born in North Carolina in a middle-class family. For eleven years he worked as a reporter, salesman, editor of a humorous magazine, and as a bank teller in a small provincial bank. Falsely charged with stealing money from the bank, he was sent to prison. During his three and a half years in prison he began to write the short stories which made him famous.

O. Henry is the creator of a new short story genre in literature. His stories are built around interesting situations and have witty and unexpected endings.

We were down South, in Alabama — Bill Driscoll and myself — when this kidnapping idea struck us.

Bill and me had a joint capital of about six hundred dollars, and we needed just two thousand dollars more. We selected for our victim the only child of a prominent citizen named Ebenezer Dorset. The father was respectable and the kid was a boy of ten, with freckles, and red hair the color of the cover of the magazine you buy at the news-stand when you want to catch a train.

About two miles from the village was a little mountain. On the rear elevation of this mountain was a cave. There we stored provisions.

One evening after sundown, we drove in a buggy past old Dorset's house. The kid was in the street, throwing rocks at a kitten on the opposite fence.

"Hey, little boy," says Bill, "would you like to have a bag of candy and a nice ride?"

The boy catches* Bill neatly in the eye with a piece of brick and puts up a fight; but, at last, we got him down in the bottom of the buggy and drove away. We took him up to the cave.

After dark I drove the buggy to the little village where we had hired it, and walked back to the mountain. There was a fire burning at the entrance to the cave, and the boy was watching a pot of boiling coffee, with two feathers stuck in his red hair. He points a stick at me when I come up and says:

"Ha! Cursed paleface, do you dare to enter the camp of Red Chief, the terror of the plains?"

"He is all right now," says Bill, rolling up his trousers and examining some bruises on his shins. "We're playing Indians."

The boy seemed to be having the time of his life. The fun of camping out had made him forget that he was a captive himself. He immediately christened me Snake-eye, the Spy, and announced that I was to be broiled at the stake at the rising of the sun.

Then we had supper.

"Red Chief," says I to the kid, "would you like to go home?"

"Aw, what for?" says he. "I hate to go to school. I like to camp out. You won't take me back home, Snake-eye, will you?"

We went to bed about eleven o'clock. We spread down some blankets and put Red Chief between us. He kept us awake¹

* The Present Tense here and on is used to make the narrative livelier.

for three hours, jumping up and screeching into mine and Bill's ears. At last, I fell into a troubled sleep, and dreamed I had been kidnapped and chained to a tree by a ferocious pirate with red hair.

Just at daybreak, I was awakened by a series of awful screams from Bill. Red Chief was sitting on Bill's chest, with one hand twined in Bill's hair. In the other he had the sharp knife we used for slicing bacon; and he was realistically trying to take Bill's scalp. I got the knife away from the kid and made him lie down again. But, from that moment, Bill's spirit was broken. He lay down on his side of the bed, but he never closed an eye again in sleep as long as that boy was with us. I dozed off for a while, but then I remembered that Red Chief had said I was to be burned at the stake. I wasn't nervous or afraid; but I sat up, lit my pipe and leaned against a rock.

I went up on the peak of the mountain and ran my eye over the vicinity.

When I got to the cave I found the boy threatening to smack Bill with a rock as big as a coconut.

"He put a red-hot boiled potato down my back," explained Bill, "and I boxed his ears."

I took the rock away from the boy and shook him until his freckles rattled.

"If you don't behave," says I, "I'll take you straight home."

"I was only funning," says he, sullenly, "I didn't mean to hurt him."

I made him and Bill shake hands, and then I took Bill aside. I thought it best to send a peremptory letter to old man Dorset that day, demanding the ransom. We got paper and pencil and worked on the letter. Bill begged me tearfully to make the ransom fifteen hundred dollars instead of two thousand. To relieve Bill, I acceded. The letter ran this way.**

"Ebenezer Dorset, Esq.:***

We have your boy concealed in a place far from your village. It is useless for you to attempt to find him. We demand fifteen hundred dollars for his return; the money to be left at midnight at the same spot as your reply. If you agree to these terms, send your answer in writing by a messenger to-night at eight o'clock. After crossing Owl Creek there are three large trees. At the bottom of the third tree your messenger will place the answer. If you pay the money as demanded, he will be return-

** The letter ran this way. Письмо гласило.

*** Esq. -- esquire эсквайр

ed to you safe within three hours. These terms are final, and if you do not accede to them no further communication will be attempted.

Two Desperate Men."

As I was about to start, the kid comes up to Bill and says, "You are the hoss.**** Get down on your hands and knees."

He jumps on Bill's back and digs his heels in his side.

"For Heaven's sake!" said Bill, "hurry back, Sam, as soon as you can. I wish we hadn't made the ransom more than a thousand*****".

When I got back to the cave Bill and the boy were not to be found. In about half an hour I heard the bushes rustle, and Bill wobbled out. Behind him was the kid, stepping softly like a scout, with a broad grin on his face.

"Sam," says Bill, "the boy is gone. I sent him home. All is off. I'm sorry we lose the ransom, but it was either that or Bill Driscoll to the madhouse." Bill was puffing, but there was a look of peace and growing content on his rose-pink features.

"Bill," says I, "there isn't any heart disease in your family, is there?"

"No," says Bill, "nothing chronic except accidents."

"Then you might turn around and have a look behind you." Bill turns and sees the boy, and loses his complexion and sits down plump on the ground. For an hour I was afraid for his mind.

At eight I was up in that tree waiting for the messenger to arrive. Exactly on time a boy rides up the road on a bicycle, slips a piece of paper into the box and pedals away again. I got the note and read it to Bill. The sum and substance of it was this:

"Two Desperate Men,

Gentlemen: I received your letter to-day by post. I think you are a little high in your demands, and I hereby make you a counter-proposition which I am inclined to believe you will accept. You bring Johnny back and pay me two hundred and fifty dollars in cash, and I agree to take him off your hands. You had better come at night,***** for the neighbours believe he is lost, and I couldn't be responsible for what they would

**** hoss (*illit.*) = horse

***** I wish we hadn't made the ransom more than a thousand. Жаль, что мы запросили выкуп больше тысячи долларов.

***** You had better come at night... Вам бы лучше прийти ночью...

do to anybody they saw bringing him back. Very respectfully,
Ebenezer Dorset."

I glanced at Bill. He had the most appealing look in his eyes I ever saw.

"Sam," says he, "what's two hundred and fifty dollars, after all? We've got the money. One more night of this kid will send me to Bedlam."

We took him home that night. We got him to go by telling him that his father had bought a rifle and a pair of moccasins for him, and we were to hunt bears the next day.

It was just twelve o'clock when we knocked at Ebenezer's door. When the kid found out that we were going to leave him at home he started up a howl and fastened himself to Bill's leg. His father peeled him away gradually.

"How long can you hold him?" asks Bill.

"I'm not as strong as I used to be," says old Dorset, "but I think I can promise you ten minutes." And as dark as it was, and as fat as Bill was, and as good a runner as I am, he was a good mile and a half out of the village before I could catch up with him.

NOTES

1. He kept us awake... Он не давал нам спать...

The verb **to keep** followed by a complex object means «поддерживать в прежнем состоянии», «заставлять».

He kept us waiting for ten minutes. Он заставил нас ждать десять минут.

WORD COMBINATIONS

to catch smb. in the eye попасть (ударить) в глаз кому-л.

to put up a fight затеять драку
to have the time of one's life веселиться, прекрасно проводить время

to box one's ears надрать уши кому-л.

the sum and substance суть, сущность

to be high in one's demands запрашивать слишком много

to start up a howl поднять вой
to catch up (with) догнать, поравняться (с)

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **respect** *n* уважение (for к кому-л., чему-л.); with respect to что касается; Syn. concerning, as to. in all respects во всех отношениях; in one (this, no,

some) respect: *They resemble each other only in one respect.*
Ant. disrespect

respectable *a* почтенный
respectful *a* почтительный

respectfully *adv* почтительно
irrespective of *prep* невзирая на, независимо от: *All people must have equal rights irrespective of race, sex and religious beliefs.*

respect *v* уважать

2. **attempt** *n* 1. попытка; проба, опыт: *He made a brave attempt to save the child's life.* 2. покушение: *An attempt was made on his life.*

attempt *v* пытаться, пробовать; предпринимать: *The Gadfly attempted to escape but failed.*

3. **agree** *v* 1. соглашаться (with с кем-л.; to на что-л.) *Ant. disagree.* 2. договариваться (on, upon о чем-л.): *All the members of the committee agreed on the first question at once.*

agreement *n* соглашение, договор; согласие; **to come to an agreement** прийти к соглашению

agreeable *a* приятный, милый; **to make oneself agreeable** стараться понравиться, угодить

4. **terms** *n pl.* 1. условия (соглашения): *Though the terms of the agreement were hard, the defeated country had to sign it.* **to come to terms with smb.** прийти к соглашению с кем-л. 2. отношения; **to be on good (bad, friendly) terms with smb.** быть в хороших (плохих, дружеских) отношениях с кем-л.; **not to be on speaking terms with smb.** не разговаривать с кем-л. 3. выражения, язык, слова; **in terms of:** *He spoke about his assistant in terms of high praise.*

term *n* 1. срок, определенный период; семестр: *The academic year has two terms, each ending in exams.* 2. термин: *The speaker used a lot of scientific terms and I must admit I did not understand all of them.*

5. **safe** *a* 1. невредимый; **safe and sound** цел(ый) и невредим(ый):

The children have returned safe and sound from their excursion to the forest. 2. безопасный, надежный, верный: *Now we are safe.* *Теперь мы в безопасности.* **to be on the safe side** на всякий случай, для большей верности: *Although the sun is shining, I'll take an umbrella to be on the safe side.*

safely *adv* благополучно, безопасно

safety *n* безопасность, сохранность; **in safety** в безопасности

save *v* 1. спасать: *He saved the child from a great danger.* 2. откладывать (деньги), копить: *The boy saved a little money to buy the book.* 3. избавлять (от чего-л.): *Your help will save me a lot of trouble.*

savings *n pl.* сбережения; **savings bank** сберкаска

6. **content** *a* довольный (with чем-л.): *Are you content with your present work?* *Syn. pleased, satisfied.* *Ant. discontent*
content *n* довольство, чувство удовлетворения; **to one's heart's content** вволю, всласть. *Ant. discontent*

7. **accident** *n* 1. случайность; **by accident** случайно, нечаянно: *I've cut my finger by accident.* 2. несчастный случай, катастрофа, авария: *Twenty people were killed in the railway accident.* **to meet with an accident** потерпеть аварию, крушение

accidental *a* случайный

accidentally *adv* случайно, неумышленно: *I've taken your book for mine accidentally.*

8. **accept** *v* принимать; допускать, соглашаться: *Did you accept their invitation to dinner?* *Ant. reject*

acceptance *n* принятие, одобрение
acceptable *a* приемлемый: *Your terms are quite acceptable, he will agree to them.* *Ant. unacceptable*

9. **lose** (lost, lost) *в* 1. терять, лишаться, утрачивать; **to lose one's head** терять голову; **to lose one's temper** рассердиться, потерять самообладание; **to lose one's way** заблудиться. 2. проиграть; **to lose a bet** проиграть пари; **to lose a battle** (war, contest) проиграть битву (войну, состязание). **Ant. to win** (won, won)

loss *н* потеря, утрата, жертва; **to suffer heavy losses** понести большие потери; **to be at a loss** быть в затруднении, в замешательстве: *Everything happen-*

ed so unexpectedly that he did not know what to do; he was quite at a loss.

10. **appealing** *а* умоляющий; трогательный; привлекательный **appeal** *в* 1. обращаться, апеллировать; прибегать (**to** к чему-л.); взывать: *The prisoner appealed to the judge for mercy.* **to appeal to reason** взывать к здравому смыслу. 2. привлекать, притягивать, нравиться: *Do those paintings appeal to you?*

appeal *н* призыв, обращение; воззвание

EXERCISES

1. a) *Give Russian equivalents for the following.*

1. The boy catches Bill neatly in the eye with a piece of brick and puts up a fight. 2. The boy seemed to be having the time of his life. 3. He announced that I was to be broiled at the stake at the rising of the sun. 4. He was realistically trying to take Bill's scalp. 5. Then I remembered that Red Chief had said I was to be burned at the stake. 6. After crossing Owl Creek there are three large trees. 7. He digs his heels in his side. 8. All is off. I'm sorry we lose the ransom, but it was either that or Bill Driscoll to the madhouse. 9. Bill loses his complexion and sits down plump on the ground.

b) *Find English equivalents for the following in the text.*

1. Нас осенила мысль. 2. Нам как раз нехватило еще двух тысяч долларов. 3. Он не давал нам спать в течение трех часов. 4. Наконец я погрузился в беспокойный сон. 5. Если ты не будешь хорошо себя вести... 6. Я не хотел сделать ему больно. 7. Я отвел Билла в сторону. 8. Билл слезно просил меня... 9. бесполезно пытаться; 10. Письмо гласило... 11. с широкой улыбкой на лице; 12. Билл побледнел. 13. Суть письма такова... 14. Я склонен был думать... 15. охотиться на медведей; 16. умоляющий взгляд; 17. догнать кого-л.

2. a) *Paraphrase the italicized parts of the sentences. Use the words and word combinations from the following list:*

to accept, appeal, appealing, attempt, to make an attempt, content, to one's heart's content, to be at a loss, to

lose one's temper, to come to an agreement, to be on the safe side, to catch up with, to get lost, terms, to meet with an accident

1. I noticed a look in the child's eyes *that was asking for help*. 2. Finally the boy got angry and, *unable to control himself*, rushed at them and started a fight. 3. He proposed to her and she *agreed to be his wife*. 4. You seem never to be *pleased with your life*. 5. We went to the beach and lay in the sun *as long as we wished*. 6. He *tried* to cross the river but the current was too swift. 7. I think they should accept the *conditions* stated in the agreement.

b) *Fill in the blanks with words and word combinations from the above list.*

1. "Don't run so fast, I can't ... you," she shouted. 2. Tom saw a desperate ... in Becky's eyes and hurried to her help. 3. You shouldn't ..., the question is not unexpected. 4. All their... to find a way out of the forest having failed, they realized they ... and were on the verge of despair. 5. You should consult a doctor ..., even if you feel better now. 6. "If you drive so fast you may ...," his mother said.

3. *Think of sentences based on the text of Lesson 3. Use the following words and word combinations.*

to threaten, to ignore, to be full of complaints, that was not an occasion for laughter, to sign a letter, to deliver a message, to wait with anxiety, not to claim somebody back, there were no signs of, to catch sight of, to be a sight to see, to object strongly to, to backfire

4. *Fill in the blanks, choosing the right word for the Russian слу-чай.*

accident (an unfortunate occurrence)

case (a thing that has happened, a matter for trial, a patient suffering from disease)

incident (an unimportant occurrence)

occasion (the moment or time when something happens)

1. He met John on several 2. "Border ... are unavoidable under such circumstances," he said. 3. Ann did not want to go by plane for fear of an 4. He could not help smiling when reading about that funny 5. "There have already been several ... of robbery in our town recently," said Sergeant Brown. 6. "The worst ... are to be sent to hospital at once,"

Dr Smith ordered. 7. I congratulated them on the ... of their national holiday. 8. The ... will be tried in High Court.

5. *Translate the following sentences. Pay attention to the emphatic never and ever.*

1. He never so much as smiled while we talked. 2. Just fancy! She never told me she was leaving so soon. 3. The next day Harry's phone never stopped ringing. 4. She softly said good-bye and went away without ever turning back.

6. a) *Use the appropriate form of the gerund. Make a list of the verbs and word combinations that do not require a preposition before a gerund. Memorize them.*

1. Has it *stopped* (to rain) yet? 2. Have you *finished* (to read) the book yet? 3. We must *go on* (to discuss) the matter. 4. The boys *kept on* (to fight). 5. You must not *postpone* (to write) an answer to their letter. 6. Don't *put off* (to get acquainted) with her. 7. You should *avoid* (to miss) lessons. 8. Everyone *enjoyed* (to ride) to the country. 9. They don't seem to *mind* (to invite) to the party. 10. He *gave up* (to smoke) after all, didn't he? 11. We *could not help* (to smile) at seeing him in such strange disguise. 12. He *denied* ever (to see) those people before. 13. The students are *busy* now (to read up) for the examinations. 14. *It is no use* (to talk) about it now. 15. He *suggested* (to save) a little money. 16. His socks always *wanted* (to darn). 17. I think the film *is worth* (to see).

b) *Use the appropriate form of the gerund. Make a list of the verbs, nouns and adjectives that require a preposition before a gerund. Memorize them.*

1. Does anyone *object to* (to sign) the agreement at once? 2. I don't *insist on* the terms (to accept). 3. The rain *prevented us from* (to go) to the park. 4. Nobody *suspected them of* (to deceive) George. 5. The two men did not *succeed in* (to carry out) the plan. 6. Unfortunately the boy could not *rely upon* (to help) by his father. 7. It *depends on* the mail (to deliver) in time. 8. They *accused him of* (to steal) money from the bank. 9. I never *thought of* (to buy) such a picture. 10. The boy was

* Pay attention to the difference in meaning of the infinitive and the gerund after the verb to stop:

Suddenly he **stopped reading** and looked at us with a smile. Внезапно он **перестал читать** и взглянул на нас с улыбкой.

On the way home he **stopped to read** some advertisements. По дороге домой он **остановился**, чтобы прочитать объявления.

clever at (to draw). 11. I was *tired of* (to argue) with them. 12. She said that starting at six in the morning meant nothing to her as she *was used to* (to get up) very early. 13. Somehow Ray did not realize that there was no *point in* (to wait) for a letter every day since he had no acquaintances living out of town. 14. I don't think you are *right in* (to lose temper) over such a trifle. 15. Who is *responsible for* (to arrange) the evening party? 16. He was *surprised at* (to treat) so rudely. 17. She was *quick in* (to guess) the truth. 18. Who would have thought him *capable of* (to do) such a thing? 19. He is *far from* (to share) your point of view. 20. The *idea of* (to write) a letter to Ray occurred to the two men on the spur of the moment. 21. What's your *reason for* (to complain)? 22. He was in the *habit of* (to confide) his secrets to everybody. 23. I'm afraid there is no *chance of* (to persuade) them into accepting our plan. 24. The *hope of* the box (to restore) to him cheered him up. 25. She was *afraid of* (to lose one's way) in the wood. 26. Ray never wrote another letter to Grace *for fear of* (to ridicule).

c) *Use the appropriate form of the gerund. Memorize the prepositions which precede the gerund in its adverbial function.*

1. Don't you think that we must discuss the matter *before* (to make) a decision? 2. *After* (to play a prank) on her he seemed quite content. 3. They departed *on* (to sign) the agreement. 4. *In* (to acquaint oneself) with the paper he noted a few interesting points. 5. The parcel can't be mailed *without* (to wrap up) properly. 6. He ended the letter *by* (to ask) her to marry him. 7. *In spite of* (to suffer heavy losses) we made another attack. 8. *Instead of* (to relieve) the pain the medicine made me feel still worse.

7. *Compare the sentences and translate them into Russian.*

1

a) Mary insisted that she (Mary herself) should see her sister to the station. — Mary insisted on seeing her sister to the station.

b) Mary insisted that he (her brother) take a taxi to the station. — Mary insisted on his taking a taxi to the station.

2

a) Grace was surprised that she (Grace herself) should be asked to write a letter to Ray. — Grace was surprised at being asked to write a letter to Ray.

b) The chief of the telephone exchange was surprised when she (Grace) was asked to take part in some practical joke. —

The chief of the telephone exchange was surprised at her being asked to take part in some practical joke.

3

Ray was surprised that his box was not empty that afternoon.— Ray was surprised at his box not being empty that afternoon.

8. *Complete the sentences using constructions with the gerund where necessary.*

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. Guy and Ralph suggested | написать Рэю письмо.
 чтобы письмо было написано в
 тот же вечер. |
| 2. She did not remember | чтобы он рассказывал им об этом.
 чтобы она рассказывала им об этом. |
| 3. I was thankful for | что мне предложили помощь.
 что они предложили мне помощь. |

9. *Change the following sentences so as to use gerundial constructions.*

1. The fact that Tom did not recognize him at once made Jesse feel uneasy. 2. The fact that Ray had written her a love letter many years ago prompted Grace to sign the letter with her real name. 3. I don't remember that the speaker mentioned your name in the report. 4. It is not necessary for us to walk all the distance; we may take a bus. 5. We insisted that the plan should be realized as quickly as possible. 6. They objected to the fact that our group should be the first to take the exams. 7. They suggested that Grace should sign the letter with a fictitious name. 8. That Rosemary was talking in her room to a poorly dressed girl seemed very unusual to Philip.

10. *Make up sentences using the following words and word combinations. Use the gerund (add prepositions if necessary).*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. a) Sam and Bill insisted | Dorset, to pay them two
 thousand dollars; the money,
 to leave at the bottom of the
 third tree at midnight; he,
 to accept our terms |
| b) He insisted | the boy, to return at night;
 Bill, to get down on his hands
 and knees |

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 2. The kidnappers were angry | the boy, to threaten to broil them at the stake; Dorset, to make a counterproposition |
| 3. We could not help | to agree to Dorset's counterproposition; to feel respect for his father; to feel relieved when we got rid of the boy |
| 4. Sam prevented | Red Chief, to smack Bill with a rock; the kid, to take Bill's scalp |
| 5. It was no use | to conceal the boy any longer, to dream of what would never come true |
| 6. Instead of | to get a good ransom they themselves had to pay Dorset, to accept their terms he made a counterproposition, to hurt his feelings you should help him |
| 7. He is not capable | to use threat, to hurt anybody, to conceal his feelings |
| 8. You should avoid | to show disrespect for old people, to use threat, to lose your temper |
| 9. Far from | to show respect for Bill, the boy tortured him in every possible way; to frighten, Dorset offered his own terms |

11. *Translate into English using the gerund where possible.*

Мы настаивали на подписании этого соглашения. 2. Он гордился тем, что догнал своих товарищей по группе, несмотря на то, что пропустил много уроков. 3. Простите, что я напомнил вам об этом несчастном случае. Я сделал это неумышленно. 4. Все были удивлены тем, как он спас положение, которое казалось безнадежным. 5. Интересно, почему он возражает против того, чтобы мы помогли ему. Это избавит его от многих забот. 6. Билл не привык к тому, чтобы ему приказывали, и надрал мальчику уши. 7. Мы узнали, что воззвание о мире было подписано во многих странах. 8. Вместо того, чтобы согласиться с нами, он продолжал спорить.

12. a) *Translate into Russian.*

1. She was a little afraid of going to London all by herself. She knew there would be no one *to fall back on* in that new big

city in case anything should go wrong. 2. As nobody smiled he realized his joke *had fallen flat*. 3. They have always been such good friends, it seems unbelievable they should *have fallen out*. 4. I am afraid this book will *fall short of* their expectations. 5. "Weren't you ever afraid your plan might *fall through*?" asked Smith.

b) *Replace the italicized parts of the sentences by word combinations with to fall.*

1. I do not think this to be a reason for *quarrelling*. 2. She accepted my offer of help and I understood she had nobody else *to rely on* in her desperate situation. 3. Ralph and Guy had never expected that their plan to make fun of Ray would *fail*.

c) *Translate into English.*

1. Боюсь, что ваше замечание не произвело ожидаемого впечатления. 2. Они не разговаривают друг с другом. Я думаю, они поссорились. 3. Все наши попытки заставить его бросить курить потерпели неудачу. 4. Его игра (acting) была не так хороша, как мы ожидали.

13. *Answer the following questions.*

1. Why did the kidnapping idea strike Sam and Bill?
2. Why did their choice fall on Dorset's son?
3. How was the kidnapping carried out?
4. How did the boy entertain himself while staying in the cave?
5. What was in the letter Sam and Bill wrote to Dorset?
6. What was the original sum of the ransom and why did Sam and Bill think of reducing it?
7. What did Bill and the boy do in Sam's absence?
8. What made the kidnappers accept Dorset's terms?
9. How did Bill and Sam take the boy back home?

14. *Prove that the following statements are right.*

- a) Sam and Bill were inexperienced kidnappers.
- b) Bill was the one who suffered most from Johnny.
- c) Sam was as much afraid of the boy as Bill was.
- d) Old Dorset was sure that his son would be restored to him.

15. *Retell the text as if you were: a) the boy, b) Bill, c) old Dorset.*

16. *Make up short dialogues using the words and word combinations in brackets:*

- a) between Bill and Johnny while Sam was away waiting for Dorset's answer (to hurt, accidentally, I didn't mean to...,

to dare, come on, be a good boy and..., to catch up with, to hunt bears, would you like to...)

- b) between Dorset and one of his neighbours after Johnny had disappeared (anxious, to meet with an accident, the kid, I've a feeling that..., he is capable of..., to think up one prank after another, to show no respect, at the sight of..., to box one's ears)
- c) between Sam and Bill after they had got rid of the boy (to feel relieved, to lose, to avoid, I don't mind..., but the next time we plan something let's be sure...)

17. *Read the text, paying attention to the gerund. Tell it.*

Chandu

(after *Mulk Raj Anand*)

I knew Chandu, the barber boy of our village, ever since our childhood when we were fond of playing games.

Chandu was six months older than I was, and he always took the lead in all matters. My mother went on constantly repeating that Chandu was a low-caste barber's son. But I envied Chandu's freedom of movement which he enjoyed after his father's death. For, having done the round of shaving and hair-cutting at the houses of the high-caste nobles, he used to bathe and dress and then have a ride to town six miles away, on the footboard of a carriage.

Knowing of my being seldom taken to town, he was fond of telling me about the wonderful clothes which he saw the sahibs, the lawyers and the policemen wearing. Once or twice he expressed a secret wish of buying for himself a dress like that of a doctor.

One day I was surprised at finding Chandu at the door of my house in the morning. He had come to show me how grand he looked in his new dress.

And he rushed off towards the house of the landlord whom he shaved every morning. I followed him.

When the landlord saw Chandu entering his house dressed as a doctor, he got furious. "Get out! Get out! You son of a devil! Wear clothes befitting your low status of a barber, or else I will have you flogged!" the landlord shouted.

Chandu did not look at me because of the shame he felt at being insulted before me. He rushed towards the grocer's store at the corner of the lane.

When I got to the head of the lane, I heard the grocer abusing Chandu in the most insulting way.

Next afternoon Chandu whistled for me. "I am going to teach these idiots a lesson. I am going on strike; I shall not go to their houses."

The rumour about the barber boy's strike spread, and jokes about the dirty beards of the elders of the village were repeated in every home. The village elders threatened to send Chandu to prison for having offended them and ordered his mother to force him to obey. But Chandu's mother told them all she thought of them in a language even clearer than that which she generally used in addressing them.

Chandu, however, invented the scheme of opening a barber's shop in partnership with some other barbers within a range of seven miles from the village. He convinced them all that in spite of their being of low caste, the elders of the village should come to them to be shaven instead of being attended at home.

Thus the first Barber's Trade Union was organized in our parts.

18. *Render in English.*

Откуда шум

Заурядный случай произошел недавно в некоей Аркадии в американском штате Калифорния. Услышав страшные крики у соседей, г-жа Браун позвонила в полицию, схватила охотничье ружье своего мужа, бросилась на лестничную площадку и принялась барабанить (to hammer) в дверь к соседям. Открывший дверь мужчина, увидев ружье, мгновенно заперся и тоже бросился к телефону, чтобы предупредить полицию.

Когда прибыла полиция, выяснилось, что крики исходили из телевизора, где демонстрировался очередной «фильм ужасов».

REVISION EXERCISES

A. The Infinitive

1. *Paraphrase the following sentences. Use Nominative with the Infinitive.*

1. It was known that Sherlock Holmes had a remarkable tact in his dealings with his landlady. 2. It was believed that Mr Brown had had another appointment for the same hour. 3. It

happened that he heard of Dr Ainstree's being in London at that time. 4. It appeared that the detective was now working at a new case. 5. It seemed that they had reduced their expenses. 6. It is supposed that the arrival of Mr N. in London and the incident in Trafalgar Square are a pure coincidence. 7. It was reported that an outbreak of a tropical disease in those regions distant from medical aid had caused a great alarm among the population of the settlement. It was said that the disease was contagious and had been brought from Sumatra. 8. It was proved that the messenger had been intercepted on his way to London. 9. It was expected that the introduction of those radical measures would improve the situation in the country. 10. It turned out that some new organisations had emerged as a result of that preparatory work. 11. It is likely that the talks will be resumed early in May.

2. *Translate into English. Use Nominative with the Infinitive.*

1. Это происшествие, по-видимому, вызвало много толков. 2. Сообщают, что делегации уже возобновили переговоры. 3. Известно, что этот врач сейчас применяет новое лечение против таких заболеваний. 4. Казалось, лекарство не облегчило страданий больного. 5. Маловероятно, что письмо будет доставлено вовремя. 6. Это свидетельство (улика) оказалось важным моментом в судебном разбирательстве. 7. Предполагают, что комиссия уже отчиталась о проделанной работе. 8. Ожидают, что товарищ Н. будет возглавлять новый отдел.

B. The Participle

1. *Use participles instead of the subordinate clauses where possible.*

1. Grace, who felt sorry for Ray, made up her mind not to take part in the joke that had been invented by Guy and Ralph. 2. When he saw the village in the distance he urged his horse to a faster pace. 3. Watson, who had come up to the mantelpiece, suddenly caught sight of a small ivory box that stood among the litter of other things. 4. After Inspector Morton had been given the sign, he hurried into the house. 5. When Ray Buffin noticed the letter that had been sent by Grace, he snatched it out of his box and at once tore open the envelope.

2. *Translate into English using participles where possible.*

1. Газовый свет, зажженный мистером Смитом, послужил сигналом для полицейского, стоявшего перед домом. 2. Спря-

тавшись за изголовьем кровати Холмса, Уотсон слышал каждое слово, произносимое его другом. 3. Увидев Шерлока Холмса, лежавшего в постели и отказывавшегося от еды и питья, предлагаемых ему, Уотсон ужаснулся. 4. Человек, открывший дверь Уотсону, оказался слугой, жившим в доме мистера Смита. 5. Услышав эти слова, Уотсон еще раз взглянул на коробочку, присланную Смитом. 6. Не получив ответа на свое письмо, Рей всегда чувствовал смущение, встречая на улице девушку, отвергнувшую его любовь.

C. The Gerund

1. *Paraphrase the following sentences using the Gerund.*

1. Sam suggested that they should kidnap the only child of a prominent citizen. 2. Bill insisted that the boy should be sent home without any ransom. 3. They couldn't guess the reason why Ray was so sad. 4. Do you object if I speak Russian? 5. There was little hope that his letter would be answered. 6. She seemed to be unconscious of the fact that she had come at the wrong moment. 7. I recalled that I had met him before. 8. He denied that he had ever doubted my words.

2. *Complete the following sentences using the gerund (supply prepositions if necessary).*

1. Johnny was clever... 2. Red Chief enjoyed... 3. Bill insisted... 4. Bill accused the boy... 5. The boy was far... 6. Bill objected... 7. Sam was afraid... 8. Dorset did not even think... 9. Writing his answer Dorset relied... 10. Bill was unaware...

3. *Translate into English using the gerund.*

1. Сначала Грейс возражала против того, чтобы молодые люди сыграли шутку над Рэем. 2. То, что Грейс подписала письмо своим именем, вызвало разочарование у Ральфа и Гая. 3. Вместо того чтобы получить выкуп, Биллу и Сэму самим пришлось уплатить 250 долларов Дорсету. 4. Билл сердился на то, что мальчишка придумывал все новые и новые шалости. Он первым решил отделаться от Джонни. 5. То, что мальчишка пригрозил, что поджарит Сэма на костре, заставило последнего встать раньше обычного. 6. Борис настаивал на том, чтобы ему сообщили все подробности. 7. Они не могли не почувствовать облегчения, когда им сказали, что их первыми пошлют в экспедицию.

Lesson 4

GRAMMAR: THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. MODEL A

1. I *should be* so glad to get acquainted with the Ivanovs. But unfortunately I shall not be able to go there with you. Я был бы рад познакомиться с Ивановыми. Но, к сожалению, я не смогу пойти с вами туда.
2. You *would enjoy* a drive to the country. It is a pity you cannot come with us. Вам бы понравилась поездка за город. Жаль, что вы не можете поехать с нами.
3. I *should have persuaded* him to take part in the contest. Why didn't you tell me about it in time? Я бы уговорил его принять участие в соревновании. Почему вы в свое время не сказали мне об этом?
4. Ann *would have been* too upset by the tragic end of the play. I am glad we did not take her to the performance. Аня была бы слишком расстроена трагическим концом пьесы. Я рад, что мы не взяли ее на спектакль.

THE QUIET AMERICAN

(by G. Greene)

Graham Greene (1904) is an outstanding contemporary English writer.

He started his career as a writer in 1929. His best writings include: "England Made Me", "The Power and the Glory", "The Heart of the Matter", "Stamboul Train", "The Third Man".

The novel "The Quiet American", published in 1955, is based on the personal experience of the author who was in Viet-Nam during the war against the French colonizers.

But political problems only serve as a background for a psychological drama of the main characters — Thomas Fowler, a British correspondent, and Alden Pyle, a young American who is

employed in the U. S. Economic Aid Mission, which had actually nothing to do with economic assistance.

I was fond of Dominguez, my assistant, an Indian, who had attended in my place the less important Press Conferences, kept a sensitive ear open to the tones of gossip and rumour, and took my messages to the cable-offices and the censorship. With the help of Indian traders he ran his own personal intelligence service for my benefit.

And because we never used our information except when it became news, and never passed any reports to the French Intelligence, he had the trust and the friendship of several Viet-minh* agents. The fact that he was Asiatic unquestionably helped.

And now that he was ill I realized how much I owed him.

It was I now who had to attend wearisome Press Conferences and hobble to my table at the Continental** for a gossip with my colleagues, but I was less capable than Dominguez of telling truth from falsehood, and so I formed the habit of calling in on him in the evenings to discuss what I had heard.

Of all the days just then that I visited him one I remember in particular. I had given up asking him how he was for fear that the question should sound like a reproach.

He said then, "I would like you to meet a friend of mine. He has a story you should listen to. I have his name written down because I know you find it difficult to remember Chinese names. We must not use it, of course. He has a warehouse for junk metal."

"Important?"

"It might be. How much do you know of your friend Pyle?"

"Not very much. Our tracks cross, that's all."

"What does he do?"

"Economic Mission, but that covers a multitude of sins. I think he's interested in home-industries — I suppose with an American business tie-up.*** I don't like the way the Americans keep the French fighting and cut out their business at the same time."

* Vietminh (*Am.*) is used in reference to the People's Army of Viet-Nam and forces fighting for freedom of the country.

** the Continental = the Continental Hotel situated in the central street of Saigon

*** ...with an American business tie-up...с американскими деловыми кругами

"I heard him talking the other day¹ at a party the Legation was giving to visiting Congressmen. They had put him on to brief them."

"God help Congress," I said, "he hasn't been in the country six months."

"He was talking about the old colonial powers — England and France, and how you two couldn't expect to win the confidence of the Asiatics. That was where America came in now with clean hands."

"Honolulu, Puerto Rico," I said, "New Mexico."****

"Then someone asked him some stock question about the chances of the Government here***** ever beating the Viet-minh and he said a Third Force could do it. There was always a Third Force to be found free from Communism and the taint of colonialism — national democracy he called it; you only had to find a leader and keep him safe from the old colonial powers. He may have found his leader," ***** Dominguez said.

"Would it matter?"

"I don't know. I don't know what he does. But go and talk to my friend."

I found the place with difficulty and almost by accident, the warehouse gates were open. I walked down a narrow track carved in the iron quarry and called out for Mr Chou, but there was no reply. At the end of the warehouse a stair led up to what I supposed might be Mr Chou's house. The staircase was lined with junk and pieces of scrap-iron. There was one big room on the landing and a whole family sat and lay about in it. No one paid any attention to my coming, only a cat leapt on to a cardboard box and a lean dog sniffed at me and withdrew.

A Chinese² came into the room.

"M. Chou?"***** I asked. "My friend, M. Dominguez, said that you had something to show me."

**** Honolulu — the administrative centre of the Hawaiian Islands. At the end of the 19th century the USA provoked a coup d'état there and, establishing a colonial regime, turned the islands into one of its main military bases in the Pacific. Puerto Rico — an island in the Caribbean Sea. After the American-Spanish war of 1898 it became a colony of the USA and remained so till 1952. New Mexico — a state in the South of the USA. After the 1846—1848 war the USA conquered almost half the territory of Mexico.

***** ...the Government here — a reference to the separatist government of South Viet-Nam.

***** He may have found his leader. Он, возможно, уже нашёл вождя.

***** M. Chou — the "M" stands for the French "monsieur".

Oh, yes, he said, he was M. Chou.

A newcomer joined us — I hadn't heard him enter. He was a young man neatly dressed in European clothes.

"If I may introduce myself, I am M. Chou's manager."

"My name is Fowler, Mr Dominguez sent me. He said that Mr Chou had something to tell me."

"Perhaps it would be better if you talked to me," the young man said. "My name is Mr Heng. We will go down to the warehouse. It is quieter there."

We went down the stairs and soon were among bedsteads and bathtubs.

"Do you see that?" said Mr Heng as he shone his light on to a small iron drum.

"What about it?"

He turned it over and showed the trade mark: "Diolacton".

"It still means nothing to me."

"Do you know what this is?" said Mr Heng, stooping and lifting a long concave object like a stick of celery which glistened in the light of the torch.

"It is a mould. This mould was made in USA. Diolacton is an American trade name. There is a flaw in the mould. That was why it was thrown away. But it should not have been thrown away with the junk — nor the drum either. That was a mistake. Mr Muoi's manager came here personally. I could not find the mould, but I let him have back the other drum. I said it was all I had, and he told me he needed them for storing chemicals. Of course, he did not ask for the mould — that would have given too much away. Mr Muoi himself called later at the American Legation and asked for Mr Pyle."

"You mean you've established a kind of connection between Pyle and the General."

"If anything unpleasant happens here in Saigon, it will be blamed on us. That is why I have shown you this."

"What is Diolacton?" I said.

Mr Heng shone his torch inside the drum. A little white powder lay like dust on the bottom of the drum.

"I heard a rumour that Pyle was importing plastic for toys."

"Not for toys," Mr Heng said.

I picked up the mould and looked at it.

"It is like parts of a rod."

Mr Heng turned away. "I only want you to remember what you have seen. Perhaps one day you will have a reason for writing about it."

NOTES

1. the other day на днях.

In Russian на днях refers both to the past and to the future while in English the other day indicates the past only. If the future is meant, one of these days is used.

2. A Chinese came into the room.

Adjectives denoting nationality are spelt with a capital letter. Note also that:

a) substantivized adjectives of such kind ending in -se and -ss are used only in the form of the singular:

a Chinese, a Swiss; two Chinese, two Swiss; the Chinese китайцы, the Swiss швейцарцы

b) the same kind of substantivized adjectives ending in -an and -ian can be used in the singular as well as in the plural:

a Russian — two Russians; the Russians русские

c) adjectives of the same class ending in sh- or -ch such as English, French, Dutch have the meaning of the plural only, denoting the nation as a whole:

the English англичане, the Dutch голландцы

If separate representatives of these nationalities are implied, compound nouns are used, their second part being -man, -woman, or in the plural -men, -women:

an Englishman, two Englishmen, many Frenchmen

WORD COMBINATIONS

to keep an ear open (to) прислушиваться (к)

to tell truth from falsehood отличать правду от лжи

to form the habit (of) завести привычку

to keep smb. safe (from) уберечь кого-то (от)

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **benefit** *n* выгода, польза, прибыль: *The treaty was concluded for the mutual benefit of the countries.*

benefit *v* помогать, приносить пользу; извлекать выгоду: *You will only benefit by reading as much as possible.*

2. **owe** *v* быть должным (кому-л.); быть обязанным: *The editors owed him ten dollars for that story. You owe me no thanks. Не стоит благодарности.*

owing *a* должный, причитающийся; оставшийся неоплаченным: *We paid all that was owing.*

owing to *prep.* по причине, вследствие, благодаря: *Owing to the rain we could not come.*

3. **falsehood** *n* ложь, неправда; фальшь

false *a* 1. ложный, ошибочный, неправильный: *a false idea, to take a false step, a false alarm.* 2. фальшивый, вероломный, лживый, обманчивый: *These rumours are false.* 3. фальшивый (о деньгах); искусственный (о волосах, зубах)

falsely *adv* фальшиво, ложно: *O. Henry was falsely accused of having stolen money.*

falsify *v* фальсифицировать, подделывать (документы); искажать (факты)

falsification *n* фальсификация, подделка; искажение

4. **particular** *n* частность, подробность; **in particular** в частности, в особенности; **to go into particulars** вдаваться в подробности

particular *a* 1. особый, исключительный, заслуживающий особого внимания: *It's a particular case. for no particular reason* без причины, без особого основания. 2. подробный, обстоятельный, тщательный. 3. разборчивый, привередливый: *She is too particular about what she wears.*

particularly *adv* очень, чрезвычайно; особенно, в особенности: *The speaker particularly stressed the urgency of such measures.*

5. **reproach** *n* упрек

reproach *v* упрекать, бранить: *Don't reproach her, it is not her fault.*

reproachful *a* укоризненный
reproachfully *adv* укоризненно

6. **cover** *v* 1. закрывать, покрывать; прикрывать: *He laughed to cover his confusion.* 2. охватывать, относиться (к чему-л.): *Such lectures will cover the whole subject.* 3. прой-

ти (расстояние): *By night they had covered twenty miles.*

cover *n* 1. чехол, переплет: *Take the book in a red cover.* **from cover to cover** от корки до корки (о книге). 2. убежище, укрытие: *The land was flat and there was no cover for our troops.* **to take cover** укрыться: *During air raids people took cover in basements.* 3. ширма, отговорка, личина, покров: *under cover of friendship*

7. **brief** *v* резюмировать, инструктировать

briefing *n* инструктаж

brief *a* краткий, сжатый: *There was a brief silence.* **in brief** вкратце: *He told us in brief what he had read in the papers.*

8. **manager** *n* управляющий, заведующий, директор

manage *v* 1. руководить, управлять, заведовать: *He can manage any business.* 2. справляться, ухитряться, суметь (сделать): *I'm afraid, he won't manage it without help.* 3. уметь обращаться (с чем-л.): *The boy managed a car quite well.*

management *n* 1. управление, руководство: *The plan was not fulfilled due to bad management.* 2. правление, дирекция, администрация: *The management of the plant accepted the workers' demands.*

9. **blame** *n* порицание, упрек, вина; **to lay the blame** возлагать ответственность (вину) (on на кого-л.): *Don't try to lay the blame on others.* **to take the blame upon oneself** принять на себя вину

blameless *a* безупречный: *Everybody knows his blameless record.*

blame *v* порицать, считать виновным: *Don't blame him!* **to be to blame** быть виноватым: *He is to blame for it.* Он виноват в этом.

EXERCISES

1. a) *Give Russian equivalents for the following.*

1. Dominguez kept a sensitive ear open to the tones of gossip and rumour, and took my messages to the cable-offices and the censorship. 2. With the help of Indian traders he ran his own personal intelligence service for my benefit. 3. I don't like the way the Americans keep the French fighting and cut out their business at the same time. 4. They had put him on to brief them. 5. That was where America came in now with clean hands. 6. Then someone asked him about the chances of the Government here ever beating the Vietminh. 7. There was always a Third Force to be found free from Communism and the taint of colonialism. 8. You only had to find a leader and keep him safe from the old colonial powers.

b) *Find English equivalents for the following in the text.*

1. прислушиваться к; 2. Я многим ему обязан. 3. отличать правду от лжи; 4. У меня сложилась привычка... 5. Из всех дней я особенно запомнил один. 6. Это прозвучало упреком. 7. Вы хорошо знаете своего друга? 8. Наши пути скрестились. 9. Чем он занимается? 10. За этим скрывается масса темных дел. 11. Ему поручили проинструктировать их. 12. завоевывать доверие; 13. обычный вопрос; 14. шанс победить (одолесть) кого-л.; 15. Разрешите представиться! 16. Мне это ни о чем не говорит. 17. когда-нибудь.

2. a) *Paraphrase the italicized parts of the sentences. Use the words and word combinations from the following list:*

to benefit, blame, to blame, to cover, false, falsehood, to manage, management, to owe, particulars, sensitive, to take cover

1. "I wonder how you can remember all those *details*," he said. 2. Though Fowler was aware of the fact that he *was in debt to Pyle for saving his life* he felt he couldn't let him play with the lives of those innocent people any longer. 3. "I should advise you to spend a month at the seaside," said the doctor. "The fresh air there *will do you good*." 4. So many *lies* come from our pride! 5. Some people carry their pride like a skin-disease, *easily hurt* at the least touch; Dominguez's pride was hidden and reduced to the smallest proportion possible. 6. In his correspondence he never mentioned any story or report if he knew it to be *untrue*.

b) *Fill in the blanks with words and word combinations from the above list.*

1. Pyle's policy was such that the ... for his crimes was laid on the patriots of Vietnam. 2. As Dominguez was ill Fowler had to...all those affairs himself. 3. I wish you were not so ... about your clothes. 4. "It is high time the ... of the factory were called to account for the miserable wages we are paid," said Tom Platt concluding his speech. 5. The thunderstorm broke out when we were crossing the field and there was neither a tree nor a hut where we could ... from the rain.

c) *Translate into English.*

1. Ты сам виноват. В своем докладе ты не осветил все эти вопросы. 2. Фаулер прекрасно понимал, что обязан своей жизнью Пайлу. 3. Нас, в особенности, интересовали результаты их последнего опыта. 4. Расскажите, пожалуйста, об этом вкратце, без подробностей. 5. Какой смысл упрекать их в этом теперь? 6. Послушай, для своего же блага ты должен довериться им и рассказать все. 7. Я помню, что должен тебе деньги. Обязательно отдам тебе на днях.

3. a) *Form adjectives from:*

Japan, Burma, Sudan, China, the Lebanon;
America, India, Australia, Canada, Hungary, Malaya,
Russia;
England, France.

b) *Give English equivalents for:*

американец, русский, японец, англичанин, французенка, китаец, бирманец, австралиец, итальянец;
русские, американцы, англичане, японцы, французы

4. a) *Study the meaning of the following words and word combinations and translate the following sentences.*

to introduce представить, познакомить
to get (become) acquainted with smb., to make smb.'s acquaintance познакомиться
to acquaint oneself with smth. ознакомиться с чем-л.
I am glad to meet you. Рад с вами познакомиться.
Meet my sister. Познакомьтесь с моей сестрой.

1. If I may introduce myself, I am Mr Chou's manager.
2. If you come with me to the club, I shall introduce you to a

number of interesting people. 3. "You ought to tell him that you've admired him for a long time and that you'd like to become better acquainted with him," said Ralph. 4. Having been appointed monitor of the group, he hastened to acquaint himself with his new duties.

b) *Fill in the blanks with to get acquainted with, to acquaint oneself with, to introduce, to meet. Translate the sentences into Russian.*

1. I wonder when and where they 2. May I ... my friend Peter to you? 3. Glad to ... you. 4. You will have to ... with the contents of this article. 5. Why did you not ... me to her at yesterday's party? 6. Would you like to ... with them? I can ... you. 7. "Is that fellow an acquaintance of yours?" "He is, and it was Petrov who ... him to me." 8. It is high time you ... with your future colleagues.

5. *Change the sentences to the past tense. Make all necessary changes.*

1. I should not do it on my own responsibility under the circumstances. 2. She would not recognize you now. 3. It would be most unwise of you to agree to it at present. 4. In this case I should not be at a loss. 5. But for you I should not even try to persuade him to do it.

6. *Translate into Russian.*

1. *But for the urgency of the work, we should go home.* 2. *But for the fearful reports about the events in Moscow, John Reed and his companions would not have left Petrograd so soon.* 3. *But for the joke the two young men wanted to play on Ray Buffin, he would probably have remained single all his life.* 4. *But for the mould thrown in the junk, it would have been difficult to establish a connection between Pyle and General Thé.*

7. *Paraphrase the sentences according to the model.*

Model: The cabman was afraid to drive his passengers through the city because of the street-fighting.

But for the street-fighting, the cabman would not have been afraid to drive his passengers through the city.

1. The kidnapping idea occurred to Sam and Bill because of the two thousand dollars they badly needed. 2. Sam accepted Dorset's terms because of the appealing look in Bill's eyes.

3. John Reed and his companions were able to travel in a separate compartment thanks to their passes from the Smolny.
4. Sam and Bill lost 250 dollars because of the boy they had kidnapped.
5. Fowler understood the connection between Pyle and General Thé thanks to Mr Heng.

8. *Translate into English.*

1. Вам бы тоже было трудно отличить оригинал от репродукции: так хорошо она выполнена. 2. Если бы не ее упреки, мы бы не поссорились. 3. Вы бы прошли такое расстояние за три часа? 4. Почему вы нам ничего не сказали? Мы бы поручили ему проинструктировать всех. 5. Начало письма гласило: «Дорогая Нина! Жаль, что тебя нет со мной и ты не видишь людей, с которыми я здесь познакомился. Они бы тебе очень понравились...» 6. Если бы не Хенг, Фаулер не подозревал бы, что Пайл виновен во взрывах, происходивших в Сайгоне. 7. На твоём месте я бы не обижался на их критику. Это делается для твоей пользы.

9. a) *Translate into Russian.*

1. He started speaking but she *cut him short* at once. 2. His saying such things about my friends *cut me to the quick*. 3. I expect him to become a very good teacher. He seems *cut out for it*! 4. Never having skated before, Mr Winkle *cut a poor figure* when he appeared on the ice. 5. The boys soon realized they would have to *cut down their expenses* if their money was to last till September. 6. Paul saw that all his arguments still *cut no ice* with the stubborn boy.

b) *Replace the italicized parts of the sentences by word combinations with to cut.*

1. Her ignoring me *hurt me deeply*. 2. I am afraid your words *will have no effect on them*. 3. There being very little provision left in store, our daily food rates had *to be reduced*. 4. Bill *looked funny and helpless* with the boy on his back.

c) *Translate into English. Use word combinations with to cut.*

1. При этих обстоятельствах им пришлось *урезать свои расходы*. 2. Мы оказались правы, выбрав его еще на один срок на эту должность. Он словно *создан* для этого дела. 3. Теперь, когда он исправил все свои ошибки, то, что она упомянула о его прошлых неудачах, *глубоко задело* его. 4. Если бы мы не *прервали* его, он бы заставил нас целый час сидеть и *слушать* его глупые истории.

10. *Answer the following questions.*

1. Who was Dominguez and what were his duties?
2. Why did Fowler form the habit of calling on Dominguez every evening?
3. What did Fowler know about Pyle?
4. What method of participating in colonial warfare did the American imperialists use in Viet-Nam?
5. Why was Fowler ironic about Pyle's being able to brief the Congressmen on the situation in Viet-Nam?
6. Why were the Americans of the opinion that England and France couldn't win the confidence of the peoples of Asia?
7. What was Pyle's idea about the chances of beating the Vietminh?
8. Who was Mr Chou? Describe the place he lived in.
9. Why did Mr Heng show Fowler the mould? Why had the mould been thrown away?
10. How was Pyle connected with Diolacton?
11. *Using the words and word combinations in brackets speak on:*
 - a) Dominguez and his help to Fowler (assistant, to keep a sensitive ear open to, to run an intelligence service for somebody's benefit, to pass a report, to have the trust (of), to owe something to somebody, to be capable of doing something, to tell truth from falsehood)
 - b) Pyle and policy of the Americans in Viet-Nam (Economic Mission, to cover a multitude of sins, to be interested in, to keep somebody from doing something, to put somebody on to brief somebody, to win the confidence of, to come in with clean hands, a chance of doing something, to be free from)
12. *Retell the text according to the following plan.*
 - a) Dominguez as Fowler's assistant.
 - b) A conversation between Fowler and Dominguez.
 - c) Fowler's visit to the warehouse.
13. *Tell the story.*

If Sharks were Human*

"Mr C., ... if sharks were human beings, would they be nicer to the little fishes?" asked the little girl.

* The fable has been translated from Bertolt Brecht. The German title is: "Wenn die Haifische Menschen wären".

"Yes, indeed," replied Mr C., "they would build great big boxes for the little fishes, with all sorts of food, both vegetable and animal. They would take care that the boxes always had fresh water, and they would make the necessary sanitary arrangements. And when for example a little fish hurt his fin, they would bandage it for him, so that the sharks should not lose him before his time.

"To stop the little fishes getting unhappy, they would give big water fêtes now and then, for happy fishes taste better than unhappy ones.

"There would of course be schools in the big boxes, where the little fishes would learn how to swim into the shark's mouth. They would need geography too, so that they could find the big lazy sharks hanging about.

"The most important thing, of course, would be the moral education of the little fishes: they would be taught that the greatest and most beautiful thing for little fishes is to sacrifice themselves joyfully, and that they should all have faith in the sharks, especially when they promised them a happy future. The little fishes would be taught that this future would not be safe unless they learnt obedience, and that they must guard against all low, materialist, selfish, or Marxist tendencies, and report to the sharks immediately when any of their fellows showed any such tendencies.

"If sharks were human, they would of course wage wars with one another, to conquer foreign boxes and foreign fishes. They would have these wars waged by their own little fishes, and would teach them that there were tremendous differences between them and the little fishes of other sharks. Little fishes, they would explain, are well known to be dumb, but they are silent in many different languages and therefore cannot possibly understand one another. To every little fish that killed one or two other little fishes in war — enemy fishes who are silent in other languages — they would give a little Order made out of seaweed, and the title of Hero.

"If sharks were human, they would naturally develop Art; there would be beautiful pictures, in which the sharks' teeth would have magnificent colours, and their jaws would look just like pleasure-gardens, in which one could have lovely romps. The theatres on the bed of the sea would show heroic little fishes swimming into the sharks' jaws, and the music would be so lovely that all the little fishes, led by the band, would stream dreamily into the sharks' jaws, full of the happiest thoughts.

“There would be religion, too. It would teach little fishes that their real life would only begin in the sharks’ belly. And besides, if sharks were human, it would no longer be true, as it is at present, that all little fishes are equal. Some of them would get appointments and would be set over others; and those who were a little bigger would be allowed to eat the smaller ones.

“In short, there would be real civilisation in the sea if sharks were human beings.”

14. *Render in English.*

Надя Лисовец

«Вы уже на фронте! Вы знаете это?» — крикнул человек, распахнувший дверь купе, словно не слышал песен и смеха, наполнявшего вагон.

«Шутник ты, дядя, какой еще фронт? Мы минские студенты. Возвращаемся из Сочи домой».

«Не знаете разве? Минск сегодня бомбили!..»

Надю Лисовец поразили не разрушенные дома. Ее удивила и напугала темнота и тишина в городе, еще недавно полном жизни, шума, огней. Здесь она родилась, окончила строительный техникум, работала...

... Связную (а messenger) одного из белорусских партизанских отрядов Надежду Лисовец подвели (to let down), сами того не ведая, два юнца, пытавшиеся угнать в лес к партизанам немецкий грузовик с солью. У них обнаружили новенькие пропуска, которыми обеспечивала своих товарищей по отряду Надя, работавшая по заданию подпольного центра в минской городской управе...

Шел февраль 1944 года. Недалек был день полного освобождения Белоруссии. Все ближе к Минску подходила Советская Армия, и все дальше на север катился товарный вагон в котором везли в концлагерь в Хаазебрук Надю Лисовец и ее сподвижниц.

Одна германская фирма владела в городке Тил шахтами. Однажды весенним утром 1944 года все население Тиля собралось у шахт и замерло в безмолвии, наблюдая, как в первый раз в эти шахты спускались на работу несчастные узницы.

Горняки Тиля были настоящими пролетариями и патриотами. Однажды механик Жак Маньет как бы невзначай упомянул о русских партизанах, сражающихся с фашистами в окрестных лесах.

... Три дня и три ночи шли по лесам тридцать семь женщин, сумевших совершить побег из лагеря. Несколько французов-проводимых указывали им путь. Но добраться до партизан им не удалось — они натолкнулись на гитлеровцев. Тогда в одном из восточных департаментов Франции возник новый партизанский отряд «Родина», состоявший из советских женщин. Командиром была Лисовец.

Несколько месяцев сражалась «Родина», пока с территории Франции не был изгнан последний оккупант. Надежде Лисовец было присвоено звание лейтенанта французской армии.

После возвращения на Родину летом 1945 года партизанка Надежда Лисовец вместе с другими принялась за восстановление города. С той поры она участвовала в сооружении всех лучших зданий Минска.

Lesson 5

GRAMMAR: THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. MODEL B

I. In simple sentences:

- a) Oh, if only I *were* acquainted with them! Если бы я был знаком с ними!
- b) If only they *had accepted* our proposal at that time! Если бы они в то время приняли наше предложение!

II. In complex sentences:

1. a) I wish he *were* with us now. Жаль, что его сейчас нет с нами.
b) He wishes I *would talk** her into going there. Он хотел бы, чтобы я уговорил ее пойти туда.
2. She speaks English as if she *were* English and *had lived* in England all her life. Она так говорит по-английски, как будто она англичанка и всю жизнь прожила в Англии.
3. "It is high time you *got down to* business," said she. «Давно пора тебе приняться за дело», — сказала она.

AT THE THEATRE

(by A. J. Cronin)

Archibald Joseph Cronin, a distinguished contemporary English writer, was born in 1896. Having returned from active service in World War I he entered Glasgow University, from which he graduated in 1919 to start a career as a physician. He practised medicine in the slums of Dublin. The experience proved useful when he took up writing.

His best novels are "Hatter's Castle", "The Stars Look Down", "The Citadel", and others.

In 1944 appeared Cronin's novel "The Green Years" where he relates the story of Robert Shannon, a little orphan. The extract below is from

* If the action in the subordinate clause follows the action in the principal clause *would* + infinitive is used.

"Shannon's Way", the continuation of "The Green Years".

Shannon, a talented physician, devotes all his life to research work. He has to combat the narrow-mindedness and corruption of the men of the profession.

Robert Shannon and Jean Law, one of his medical students, love each other but cannot get married because Robert is a Catholic and Jean has been brought up in a Protestant family. Her parents observe strict traditions that forbid any entertainments including theatres, dances etc.

The extract below describes Jean's first visit to the theatre.

When I met Miss Jean at the theatre, her expression was eager, her dark irises held a sparkle of excitement.

"I've been looking at the posters," she said, as we entered the foyer, "I can see nothing wrong in them whatever."

Our seats, although inexpensive, were reasonably good, two pit stalls in the third row, and as we occupied them, the orchestra began tuning up. My companion gave me a glance of ardent expression and burrowed into the programme which I handed her.

Then, as though wishing to be free of all encumbrance, she took off and entrusted to me her wristlet watch.

"Please keep it safe for me. It's loose. And has worried me all afternoon."

Presently the lights went down, then, after a short overture, the curtain rose upon a scene of eighteenth century Paris.

This was the evergreen play from "A Tale of Two Cities".*

At first my companion seemed to reserve her judgement, then gradually she sat up straight, her clear eyes kindling with interest and delight. Without removing her gaze from the stage she murmured to me in an undertone:

"What a lovely scene!"

Then she yielded herself to the charm of Sydney Carton** and sylphlike Lucie Manette.

At the first interval she relaxed slowly, with a sigh, and, fanning her flushed cheeks with her programme, bent a grateful glance upon me.

"It's splendid, Mr Shannon. So different from what I expected. I can't tell you what a treat it is for me."

"Would you like an ice?"

* "A Tale of Two Cities" — a classical performance, based on the famous novel by Charles Dickens

** Sydney Carton Lucie Manette — characters in the play

"Oh, no, I couldn't dream of it. After what we've seen it would be like sacrilege."

"Of course, it's not a really first-rate play."

"Oh, it is, it is," she insisted. "It's lovely. I feel so sorry for poor Sydney Carton. He's so much in love with Lucie and she... Oh, it must be a frightful thing, Mr Shannon, to be terribly in love with someone and not to be loved in return."

"Quite," I agreed bravely. "Of course, they're extremely good friends. And friendship is a wonderful thing."

She consulted her programme to conceal her blush.

"I like them all," she said. "The girl who does Lucie*** is very sweet, she has lovely long blond hair. Miss N. de Silva is her name."

"She," I answered, "in real life, is Martin Harvey's wife."

"Nol" she exclaimed, looking up with animation. "How interesting!"

"She is probably forty-five years of age and that blond hair is a wig."

"Please, don't, Mr Shannon," she cried, in a shocked voice. "How can you joke about such things? I'm loving every minute of it. Hush! The curtain's going up."

The second act began with green lights and soft, sad music. And more and more the sensitive features of my companion reflected the emotions awakened in her breast. At the intermission, deeply affected, she barely spoke at all. But, as the last act got under way, a strange phenomenon occurred, how I could not guess, yet in some manner her hand, small and rather damp, became entangled with my own.

And thus we sat, with fingers interlocked, as though to sustain each other while the drama of Carton's self-sacrifice worked to its heart-rending end. As the noble fellow made the supreme sacrifice, mounting to the guillotine firmly, with pallid countenance and carefully ruffled raven locks, his speaking eye soulfully sweeping the gallery and pit, one by one, like pattering raindrops in springtime, my companion's warm, tender tears fell upon the back of my hand.

At last, the end, with a clamorous house and many, many curtain-calls for Miss de Silva and Martin Harvey — now looking, in fact, happy and handsome in his silk shirt and varnished top-boots, marvellously resurrected from his tomb. Miss Jean Law, however, was too overcome to join in such banal applause. Silently, as though crushed by feelings too deep for

*** The girl who does Lucie... Девушка, исполняющая роль Люси...

words, she rose and accompanied me from the theatre. Only when we reached the street did she turn to me****.

"Oh, Robert," she whispered, with brimming eyes. "You can't believe how much I've enjoyed myself."

It was the first time she had used my Christian name.¹

We walked to Central Station in silence, and, since her train, the last of the day, did not leave for fifteen minutes, we stood somewhat self-consciously together under the bookstall clock.

Suddenly, as though awakening from a dream, Miss Jean gave a little start of recollection.

"My watch!" she exclaimed. "I was almost forgetting it."

"Oh, of course," I smiled. "I had quite forgotten too." And I felt in my jacket pocket for the trinket she had entrusted me.

But I could not find it. I searched unsuccessfully through all the pockets of my jacket, inside and out. Then, with growing consternation I began to fumble in my waistcoat pockets.

"Good heavens," I muttered. "I don't seem to have it."

"But you must have it." Her voice sounded stiff and queer. "I gave it to you."

"I know you did, but I'm such an absent-minded beggar. I mislay everything."

I was now searching, vainly, and somehow desperately, in my trousers when, chancing to glance up, I caught sight of the look upon Miss Jean's face, the look of a pure young woman, who finds after all, that she is indeed dealing with a black-guard and has been deceived by him: such a look of pain, doubt and consternation I stopped my futile fumbblings in dismay.

"What's the matter?"

"It isn't my watch." Her lips had turned deathly white, her voice was smaller than ever. "It's my mother's watch, given her by my father. I borrowed it, out of vanity, to impress you. Oh, dear, oh dear." The inexhaustible fountains of her eyes overflowed again. "After this lovely evening ... when I was trusting you and ... liking you ..."

"Good Lord," I shouted. "Do you think I've stolen the blasted thing?"

**** Only when we reached the street did she turn to me. Только когда мы вышли на улицу, она обратилась ко мне. (Inversion for emphasis sake)

By way of answer***** she broke down completely. Then, as she opened her handbag to find her sodden handkerchief, a sudden gleam of gold illumined the dimness of the station arches. I remembered that, while she sat entranced — fearing, indeed, that I might lose the thing — I had slipped it for safety in her bag.

“Oh!” she cried, petrified. “Oh, dear, goodness ...”

She stared at me in horrified contrition and stammered: “How can I ... ever apologize ... for doubting you?”

Stony silence on my part.

From behind us came the shrill blast of a guard’s whistle, followed by the warning shriek of an engine.

“Robert!” she cried wildly. “What can I say ... oh, my dear, what can I do?”

I gazed upon her coldly. Again the engine shrieked.

“Unless you wish to spend the night on the Winton pavements, I advise you to catch your train.”

Frantically, she gazed from me to the platform where, with slow, reverberating chuffs, her train was beginning to move. For an instant she hesitated, then, with a little moan, she turned and ran.

When I saw that she was safely aboard I turned, and, a few minutes later, took the last train for Dalnair.

NOTES

1. Christian name (first name) *имя*, в отличие от *surname фамилия*.

Note that when asked “What is your name?” one is supposed to give one’s name in full. In English and in American names, such as “John D. Barter” the D. stands for the so-called middle name which may be the mother’s maiden name, the surname of any person honoured in the family or any other word: William Makepiece Thackeray, Henry W. (Washington) Chinton, etc.

WORD COMBINATIONS

to entrust smth. to smb. *вверять что-л. кому-л.*

to entrust smb. with smth. *поручать кому-л. что-л.*

the curtain goes up (rises) *занавес поднимается*

to reserve one’s judgement *умолчать, не высказать своего мнения*
to yield to smth. *поддаваться (чужеству и т. п.)*

to get under way *зд. начинаться*
curtain-calls *вызов актеров к рампе (после спектакля)*

***** By way of answer... *Вместо ответа...*

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **reserve** *v* 1. сбергать, прибегать, откладывать, запасать: *If I were you I'd reserve strength for the climb.* 2. резервировать, заказывать заранее: *They reserved rooms at a hotel.*
reserved *a* 1. сдержанный, скрытый, замкнутый, необщительный, осторожный: *He is too reserved to confide in his friends.* 2. заказанный заранее: *These are the reserved seats I've been telling you about.*
reserve *n* 1. запас; резерв; **in reserve** в запасе. 2. оговорка, условие, ограничение; **without reserve** безоговорочно, полностью; откровенно, ничего не скрывая: *We accept your conditions without reserve. At last she told us everything without reserve.*
- reservation** *n* 1. оговорка; **without reservation** безоговорочно: *We accept your proposal without reservation.* 2. предварительный заказ (мест на пароходе, в гостинице и т. п.); **to make a reservation** забронировать: *Have you made your reservations?*
2. **judgement** *n* 1. приговор, решение суда: *The judgement was against Smith.* 2. мнение, взгляд: *In my judgement you are wrong.*
judge *n* судья: *The judge said the case would be heard at the Supreme Court.*
judge *v* 1. судить, считать; составить себе мнение, приходить к выводу: *I could not judge whether he was right or wrong. You'd better not judge people by their looks.* 2. осуждать, порицать: *Who can judge him for that?*
judging by (from) *prep* судя по: *Judging from what you say, he must be very inexperienced.*
3. **remove** *v* 1. передвигать, убирать, уносить: *Why have you removed the table from this corner?* 2. снимать: *He removed his hat.* 3. устранять, удалять: *He is determined to remove all obstacles to achieve his aim.*
removal *n* устранение (препятствий), перемещение
4. **relax** *v* ослаблять(ся), уменьшать напряжение, делать передышку: *The Soviet Union does its best to relax international tension. Stop your work and relax a little!*
relaxation *n* ослабление, уменьшение, смягчение (напряженности); отдых, передышка
5. **overcome** (**overcame overcome**) *v* 1. победить, побороть (српax): *I saw he was trying to overcome his pain.* 2. охватить, обуять (о чувстве): *I was overcome by fear.* 3. истощать; лишать самообладания: *They were overcome by hunger and exhaustion.*
6. **vainly** *adv* 1. напрасно, тщетно; 2. самодовольно, тщеславно
vain *a* 1. тщетный, напрасный: *He made some vain attempts to cross the river in vain.* 2. тщеславный, полный самонадеянности: *He is a silly, vain man who always expects to be flattered.*
vanity *n* тщеславие
7. **deal** (**dealt, dealt**) *v* 1. иметь дело, общаться (with с кем-л.): *I don't deal with dishonest people.* 2. рассматривать (сoп-рoс): *This article deals with some problems of foreign policy.* 3. торговать (in чем-л.): *Mr Brown's shop dealt in hardware.* **to deal a blow** наносить удар
deal *n* 1. сделка, соглашение; **to**

make a deal заключать сделку.
2. количество; **a good deal**,
a great deal много, множество:
*It may cause you a great deal
of trouble.*

8. **pain** *n* 1. боль, страдание: *His
injured leg caused him great
pain.* 2. *pl.* старания, труды:
No pains, no gains. (proverb)
Без труда не выудишь и рыбку
из пруда. **to take pains** стараться

painful *a* 1. болезненный, мучи-
тельный: *That farewell proce-
dure was too painful for her.*
The problem is a painful one.
2. трудный: *The voyage proved
painful.* Ant. **painless**

painstaking *a* усердный, тщатель-
ный: *It demands most pains-
taking work.*

9. **slip** *v* 1. скользить, по-
скользнуться, выскользнуть,
ускользнуть: *She slipped and
sprained her foot. He slipped
out of the room. His remark slip-
ped her memory.* 2. сунуть
(руку в карман, записку в
книгу и т. н.): *I slipped the
note into my pocket.*

slip *n* 1. скольжение. 2. ошибка;
a slip of the tongue обмолвка;
a slip of the pen описка.
3. длинная узкая полоска (че-
го-л.); *a slip of paper*
slippery *a* скользкий

EXERCISES

1. a) Give Russian equivalents for the following.

1. My companion gave me a glance of ardent expression and burrowed into the programme which I handed her. 2. After a short overture, the curtain rose upon a scene of eighteenth-century Paris. 3. At the first interval she relaxed slowly, with a sigh. 4. But as the last act got under way, a strange phenomenon occurred. 5. And thus we sat as though to sustain each other while the drama of Carton's self-sacrifice worked to its heart-rending end. 6. As the noble fellow mounted to the guillotine, his speaking eye soulfully sweeping the gallery and the pit... 7. At last, the end, with a clamorous house and many curtain-calls for Miss de Silva... 8. Her lips turned deathly white, her voice was smaller than ever. 9. When she was safely aboard, I turned, and took the last train for Dalnair.

- b) Find English equivalents for the following in the text.

1. Затем, как бы желая освободиться от всякого бремени, она передала мне свои ручные часы. 2. Сначала мисс Джин ничего не сказала о пьесе (не высказала своего мнения). 3. Ее глаза светились интересом и восторгом. 4. Не отрывая взгляда от сцены, она сказала мне шепотом: «Какая восхитительная сцена!» 5. Какое это для меня удовольствие! 6. Должно быть, ужасно любить без взаимности. 7. Она посмотрела в программу, чтобы скрыть краску смущения. 8. В жизни она жена Мартина Гарви. 9. «Как вы можете шутить такими вещами!» — сказала она возмущенно. 10. Она находилась под слишком

большим впечатлением, чтобы просто со всеми аплодировать. 11. И только когда мы вышли на улицу, она обратилась ко мне. 12. Она назвала меня по имени. 13. «Я так рассеян», — сказал он. 14. Вместо ответа она разрыдалась. 15. Ледяное молчание с моей стороны.

2. a) *Paraphrase the italicized parts of the following sentences. Use words or word combinations from the list.*

to deal, to get curtain-calls, judgement, judging by, to overcome, to relax, to remove, to reserve, reserved, reservation, to take pains

1. She could not *suppress* her emotion. I saw tears running down her face. 2. Dick *booked* two seats in the stalls and invited Stella to the performance. 3. Bill did not know how to *treat* children and allowed the boy to torture him. 4. On seeing Ann he *took off* his hat by way of greeting. 5. "I see you have *done your best* to improve your spelling," the teacher said approvingly. 6. Robert's *opinion* was that the acting was far from perfect.

- b) *Fill in the blanks with words and word combinations from the above list.*

1. John never speaks his mind, never confides his troubles to anyone, he is never excited, in short, he is very 2. Now that Mrs Brown was quite alone she was a little afraid that she would be unable to ... all the difficulties facing her. 3. Sam and Bill accepted Dorset's terms without 5. The boy was very stubborn and hard to ... with. 4. The play was a success and the actors ... many ... after the performance. 6. Stop being so nervous! All is over and you may

- c) *Translate into English.*

1. Было бы хорошо заранее заказать билеты на этот спектакль. 2. Если бы вы передвинули отсюда книжный шкаф, здесь было бы место для кресла. 3. Я уверен, что он постарается ознакомиться с содержанием этих книг как можно скорее. 4. Судя по их отчету, комиссия уже выполнила всю порученную ей работу. 5. В контракте была оговорка, вызвавшая у них возражение. 6. Мы напрасно пытались ободрить его. Он не мог преодолеть своего смущения и продолжал молчать.

3. a) *Translate the following words into Russian, paying attention to the prefix mis-.*

misbehave, miscalculate, misgovern, misinform, misinter-

pret, misjudge, mislay, mislead, misprint, mispronounce, mispell, misunderstand, misuse, mistrust

b) *Read the following words and translate them into Russian.*

self-sacrifice, self-criticism, self-service, self-possession, self-assurance, self-determination, self-respect, self-deceit (self-deception), self-defence, self-confident, self-conscious

4. *Fill in the blanks with the verbs to borrow, to lend or to owe.*

1. Don't worry about the dictionary, I can ... you mine for two days. 2. He ... so much money to the shop-keepers that the latter refused to credit him. 3. "Thank you very much, indeed, for the trouble you've taken." "You ... me no thanks." 4. He couldn't get the magazine in any of the bookstalls, so he had to ... it from his neighbour. 5. There was no way to ... money from Mr Poker. "Am I ... money to everyone who comes along and wants it?" the stingy man would say. 6. "I never ... anything from anybody since I hate being in debt," she said. 7. He ... his success to hard work and diligence.

5. *Pay attention to the forms of the Subjunctive Mood, Model B.*
a) *Translate into Russian.*

1. If only she were not so anxious about the children. 2. Oh, if only the medicine relieved his pain. 3. If only she had not turned down my proposal yesterday. 4. I wish I were not so busy at present. 5. I wish you had introduced me to your sister at yesterday's party. 6. She wishes he were not so severe in his judgement of people. 7. I wished we knew how to deal with the problem. 8. We wish they would sign the papers as soon as possible. 9. Smith spoke to Dr Watson as if he were really anxious to treat Holmes for his disease. 10. Jean was overcome by emotion as if she had seen first-rate acting. 11. It is time the operator answered the call. 12. Isn't it time you distributed the mail? 13. It is high time the letter were delivered.

b) *Replace the infinitives in brackets by Model B.*

1. "Oh, if only we (to kidnap) another boy," thought Bill. 2. If only my shoe (not to hurt) me so much. 3. If only he (to accept) our terms. 4. If only we (to sign) the paper two days earlier. 5. I wish you (to reserve) seats for us. 6. I wish I (not to owe) them anything. 7. Now I wish we (not to agree) to that plan of yours at the time. 8. He wished he (not to be) responsible for the whole group. 9. The young men were gay as if their

joke (not to backfire). 10. The birds flew up as if they (to be frightened) by something.

c) *Paraphrase the following sentences. Use Model B.*

1. I am sorry to have lost the bet. 2. It is a pity I don't know what makes him feel so discouraged. 3. It is a pity you haven't won the first prize. 4. I wanted my dream to come true. 5. We don't want them to oppose our proposal. 6. Unfortunately, the lecturer used a lot of scientific terms which puzzled me.

d) *Translate into English.*

1. Если бы вам удалось уговорить их! 2. Ах, если бы он попытался сделать это раньше! 3. «Если бы он только принял наши условия», — подумал Билл. 4. Жаль, что мы ему поручили эту работу. 5. Я сожалею, что мы поссорились. 6. Лучше бы вы называли вещи своими именами. 7. Хотелось бы, чтобы они скорее рассмотрели эти вопросы. 8. Он всегда судил о людях так сурово, как будто сам был безупречен. 9. Жаль, что он такой тщеславный. 10. Она продолжала говорить, как будто не слышала моего замечания. 11. Хотелось бы, чтобы у нас места были в партере. 12. У него был такой вид, как будто он перенес тяжелую болезнь. 13. Мы сожалели, что он не оправдал наших надежд. 14. Пора устранить все препятствия на пути мирных переговоров. 15. Не пора ли нам рассмотреть этот вопрос?

6. a) *Translate into Russian.*

1. At last the severe winter *gave way to* spring. 2. Don't let's *give way to* despair. Let's cheer up! 3. After a short argument he *gave way (gave in)* and consented to do the work. 4. The windows on this side of the house *give upon* a large park. 5. Do you know that he *has given up* the idea of moving to Leningrad? 6. We must *give him his due* — he really works hard at his English. 7. "My sister *gives you her love*," I read in the letter. 8. This *gave rise to* a new aspect in socialist emulation — competition for better quality of production.

b) *Replace the italicized parts of the sentences by word combinations with to give.*

1. In vain did I try to persuade him. He would not *surrender*. 2. It is not surprising that such a policy *should have caused* violent disturbances in Ireland. 3. Why *should he be overcome by* despair? 4. We must *do justice to* John he never leaves his friends in trouble. 5. Isn't it time he *stopped* insisting on it?

c) *Translate into English.*

1. Мы должны отдать ему должное: он готов помочь каждому. 2. Передайте им привет от меня! 3. Жаль, что Аня отказалась от своего плана. 4. Вскоре испуг уступил место радости. 5. Мы не хотели, чтобы он поддавался отчаянию. 6. Наконец-то он уступил. 7. Это положило начало новому движению среди революционно настроенной молодежи.

7. *Think of sentences with the following word combinations.*

out of curiosity (vanity), by way of answer, to entrust somebody with something, to consult (a doctor, a time-table, a telephone directory, a reference book, etc.), to tune (up) (a piano, a guitar), out of tune, to get (to see) one safely aboard (a train, a ship, etc.), to reserve one's opinion (judgement)

8. *Answer the following questions.*

1. Why did Jean say she found nothing wrong with the posters?
2. Why did she entrust her wrist-watch to Robert?
3. What was Jean's impression of the first act of the play and the actors? How did she express her feelings?
4. How did Jean behave during the last act?
5. What made Jean give a start when they were standing under the bookstall clock after the performance?
6. Why was Jean so anxious to get the watch back?
7. What were Robert's feelings during that painful scene?
8. What did Jean feel upon the discovery of the watch?
9. Do you think Robert was justified in behaving towards Jean as he did?

9. *Retell the text as if you were: a) Robert, b) Jean.*

10. *Use the words and word combinations in brackets to describe:*

- a) your visit to the theatre (to look at the posters, to enter the foyer, to buy a programme, characters, the stalls, the gallery, in the ... row, to occupy seats, the stage, the orchestra — to tune up, to play the overture, music — soft, sad, sweet, the lights — to go up, the curtain — to go up, to rise, to go down, the act, the scene, an interval, make up, comedy, drama, to get curtain-calls, to join in the applause, a first rate play)
- b) some plays by English playwrights staged at Moscow theatres.

11. *Tell the story.*

A Case of Suspicion

(after *Ed. Wallace*)

He threw back the covers and sat up on his bed, his feet feeling along the cold floor for his slippers, the telephone ringing insistently a little distance away. He turned on the light and walked to the phone, took down the receiver.

"This is Doctor Benson," he said.

The November wind was bringing sounds of winter as it blew around the little white house. The doctor stared at his watch. Two o'clock. His mind complained at the horrible hour and he wondered why children always had to be born at such improper times.

He got into his clothes, took up two small handbags, opened the door and ran out.

His car started with difficulty, coughed a dozen times, but then began to run more smoothly.

It was a long ride to the Sorley farm and the sight of a man walking alone along the country road was a welcome relief to the doctor.

Coming alongside, Doctor Benson stopped and invited the man to ride. The man got in.

"Are you going far?" asked the doctor.

"I'm going all the way to Detroit," said the man, a rather thin man with small black eyes filled with tears from the wind. "Could you give me a cigarette?"

The doctor took out a package and gave it to the rider. When the cigarette was lighted the man held the package a moment and then asked:

"Do you mind, mister, if I take another cigarette for later?" He shook the package to remove another cigarette without waiting for the doctor to answer.

"I'll put them back in your pocket," the little fellow said.

Doctor Benson put his hand down quickly to receive the cigarettes and was a little irritated to find them already in his pocket.

After a few minutes Doctor Benson said:

"So you are going to Detroit?"

"I'm going out to look for work in one of the automobile plants."

"Are you a mechanic?"

"More or less. I've been driving a truck since the war ended. But I lost my job about a month ago."

"Were you in the army during the war?"

"Yeah, I was in the ambulance section. Right up at the front. Drove an ambulance for four years."

"Is that so? I'm doctor myself. Doctor Benson is my name."

"I thought this car smelled like pills," the man laughed. Then he added more seriously, "My name is Evans."

They rode silently for a few minutes. As the man leaned over, Doctor Benson caught his first good look at the small catlike face. He noticed also a deep long scar on the man's cheek, bright and red-looking as though it were of recent origin.

The doctor thought of Mrs Ott Sorley and reached for his watch. His fingers went deep into his pocket before he realized that his watch was not there. He moved his hand very slowly and very carefully below the seat and took out his automatic pistol, which he always carried with him. Then he stopped the car and pushed the nose of the gun into Evans' side.

"Put that watch into my pocket," he said angrily.

The rider jumped with fear and put up his hands quickly. "My God, mister," he whispered, "I thought you..."

"Put that watch in my pocket before I let this gun go off," the doctor repeated coldly.

Evans put his hand in his own pocket and later with trembling hands put the watch into the doctor's pocket.

The doctor opened the door and forced the man out of the car.

"I'm out here to-night, probably to save a woman's life, but I took the time to try to help you," he said. Then he started the car and rode off.

Everything went well with Mrs Ott Sorley and after it was all over the doctor told the whole story to Mr Sorley, feeling a little proud. Mr Sorley smiled wide at such an exciting story coming from young Doctor Benson.

"Well, I'm glad he gave it to you back," he said, "because if he hadn't, we wouldn't have any idea what time the child was born. What time would you say it happened, Doc?"

Doctor Benson took the watch from his pocket and stared strangely at it. The crystal was cracked, the top was broken. He turned the watch over and studied the worn inscription there:

"To private T. Evans, Ambulance Section, whose personal bravery saved our lives the night of Nov. 3, 1943, near the Italian front. Nurses Nesbitt, Jones and Wingate."

Lesson 6

GRAMMAR: THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. MODELS A AND B IN COMPLEX SENTENCES (WITH SUBORDINATE CLAUSES OF CONDITION AND CONCESSION)

1. If we *were* quite sure it was timely, we *should address* this message to them. *Were* we quite sure it was timely, we *should address* this message to them. Если бы мы были совершенно уверены, что это своевременно, мы послали бы это письмо им.
If I *had* a telephone at home, you *could ring* me up now and then. *Had* I a telephone at home, you *could ring* me up now and then. Если бы у меня был телефон, вы могли бы звонить мне время от времени.
If Sam and Bill *had known* that it was they who would have to pay the money, they *would never have attempted* any kidnapping. *Had* Sam and Bill *known* that it was they who would have to pay the money, they *would never have attempted* any kidnapping. Если бы Сэм и Билл знали, что им самим придется платить, они ни за что бы не затеяли никакого похищения.
2. Even if (even though) some of his objections *had caused* some opposition on their part he *would have spoken* his mind. Даже если бы некоторые из его возражений вызвали противодействие с их стороны, он все равно высказался бы откровенно.

THE END OF THE STORY

(by Jack London)

Jack London (1876—1916) was born in San Francisco, California, in the family of a small farmer. From early childhood he knew poverty and hardships. He started to work when quite a boy: he delivered newspapers, worked on an ice wagon and in a cannery.

In search of work London tried many kinds of jobs: he was a sailor, worked in a jute mill,

in a laundry, etc. Once he was arrested for tramp-ing. During the gold rush he went to Klondike but soon returned ill and without money.

His most varied experiences are reflected in numerous short stories, novels, essays and articles.

London's major novels "Martin Eden" and "The Iron Heel" deal with important social problems and reveal the evils of capitalism.

"The People of the Abyss" is a wonderful collection of essays describing the horrors of the London slums. Jack London is particularly famous for his short stories.

The sheet-iron stove roared red-hot. The men played a rubber of whist.

Dr Linday picked up his hand, and without ceasing from sorting called "Come in", to a knock on the door.

"What's the matter with you?" — this last to the stranger who entered.

The newcomer vainly strove to move his ice-covered jaws. That he had been on trail* for long hours and days was patent.

"Nothing the matter with me," he finally announced. "But if they's a doctor in the outfit** he's sure needed. They's a man up the Little Peco that's had a ruction with a panther."

"Bad?"

"Shoulder dislocated. Some ribs broke*** for sure. Right arm broke. An' clawed clean to the bone most all over."

"He's as good as dead," was Linday's judgement, as he angrily fingered the cards.

"That man ain't going to die. He knows I've come for a doctor, an' he'll make out to live until you get there. He won't let himself die. I know him. Besides, his wife's with him, an she's helping him live till you come. They think a almighty heap of each other.*****"

Three days later the two men staggered up to a cabin that stood beside the roaring Little Peco. Coming in from the bright sunshine to the dark cabin, Linday was no more than aware of two men and a woman. But he was not interested in them. He went directly to the bunk where lay the injured man. The latter was lying on his back, with eyes closed.

* ... he had been on trail... *зд.* ...он находился в пути...

** ... if they's a doctor in the outfit ...(*illit.*) = ... if there is a doctor here...

*** broke (*illit.*)=broken

**** They think a almighty heap of each other. Они очень любят друг друга.

"What dressings have you been using?" Linday asked of the woman.

"Corrosive sublimate, regular solution," came the answer.

He glanced quickly at her, shot an even quicker glance at the face of the injured man, and stood erect. She breathed sharply. Linday turned to the men.

"You clear out — chop wood or something. Clear out."

Linday busied himself with a superficial examination of the patient while the cabin was emptying.

"So?" he said. "So that's your Rex Strang."

She dropped her eyes to the man in the bunk and then in silence returned Linday's gaze.

"Why don't you speak?"

She shrugged her shoulders. "What is the use? You know it is Rex Strang. What are you going to do about..." She inclined her head toward the unconscious man.

"Nothing."

"You mean you will kill him," she said slowly. "Kill him by doing nothing, for you can save him if you will.*****"

"Take it that way. From time immemorial it has been a not uncommon custom so to dispose of wife-stealers."

"You are unfair, Grant," she answered gently. "Rex never stole me. It was you who lost me. I went with him with a song on my lips. As well accuse me of stealing him."

"A good way of looking at it," Linday conceded.

"Do you remember Lake Geneva?"

"I ought to. I was rather absurdly happy."

She nodded, and her eyes were luminous. "There is such a thing as old sake. Won't you, Grant, please just remember back..."

"Now you're taking advantage," he smiled. "No, thank you. I'm not playing the Good Samaritan."

"Yet, you made this hard journey for an unknown man," she urged.

His impatience was sharply manifest. "Do you fancy I'd have moved a step had I known he was my wife's lover?"

"Grant," she cried hastily. "I don't want to lose him. I do love him, Grant. Oh, Grant, please, please."

The injured man's chest rose and fell under the fur robes.

"How much do you love him?" he asked.

Her breast filled and rose, and her eyes shone with a light unashamed and proud. He nodded in token that he was answered.

***** ...if you will ... если захочешь

"I remember reading a story. I want to tell you about it. There was a woman, young and beautiful; a man magnificent, a lover of beauty. This man was a painter. He kissed her and rode away. In ten years she wept the beauty out of her face. Now it happened that the man went blind, and ten years afterwards, led as a child by the hand, he stumbled back to her. He could no longer paint. And she was happy, and glad he could not see her face. Remember, he worshipped beauty. And he continued to believe in her beauty. The memory of it was vivid in him. One day he told her of five great pictures he wished to paint. If only his sight could be restored to paint them, he could be content. And then, no matter how, there came into her hands an elixir. Anointed on his eyes, the sight would surely and fully return. You see her struggle. With sight, he could paint his five pictures. Also, he would leave her. It was impossible that he could abide her ruined face. Five days she struggled. Then she anointed his eyes."

Linday broke off. "The question is, do you love Rex Strang as much as that?"

"And if I do?" she countered.

"You can sacrifice? You can give him up?"

Slow and reluctant was her "Yes."

"And you will come with me?"

"Yes." This time her voice was a whisper. "When he is well — yes."

"You understand. It must be Lake Geneva over again. You will be my wife."

She seemed to shrink and droop, but her head nodded.

He stood up briskly, went to his pack, and began unstrapping.

Noted for his daring and success as a surgeon, through the days that followed Linday exceeded himself in daring and success. There were days of high temperature and delirium; days when Strang lay unconscious, the sweat of pain on his face. Linday was indefatigable, audacious and fortunate and winning. He was not content to make the man live. He devoted himself to the problem of making him whole and strong again.

"He will be a cripple?" Madge queried.

"He will not merely walk and talk," Linday told her. "He shall run and leap, swim and fight panthers. And, I warn you, he will fascinate women just as of old. Will you like that? Remember, you will not be with him."

"Go on, go on," she breathed. "Make him what he was."

Came the day when Strang's bed was carried out of doors

into the sunshine. Later, Strang was able to sit up on the edge of the bed, able to walk his first steps.

"Let me tell him now," she said.

"No, I'm making a complete job of this. I want no setbacks."

Summer came on. Linday never let up on Strang. He studied his walk, his body movements and for the thousandth time made him flex all his muscles. Massage was given him without end. But Linday was not yet satisfied.

July passed, and August neared its end, when he ordered Strang out on trail to get a mouse. Linday kept at his heels, watching him, studying him. At the end of ten miles, he called a halt and threw himself down on the moss.

"Enough!" he cried. "I can't keep up with you."

"You'll do, Strang. For a winter or two you may expect to feel the cold and damp in the old wounds. But that will pass."

"God, doctor, you have performed miracles with me. I don't know how to thank you. I don't even know your name."

"Which doesn't matter. I want one final test, and then I'm done with you. At the head of this creek is a tributary of the Big Windy.***** Daw tells me that last year you went over and back again, in three days. It's up to you***** to go there and back in the same time as last year."

"Now," said Linday to Madge. "You have an hour in which to pack. I'll go and get the canoe ready."

"You have sent him away for three days, and robbed me of my last words to him."

"Leave a letter."

When he returned from the canoe, her outfit was packed, the letter written. He carried her pack down to the bank, and steadied the canoe with one hand while he extended the other to help her. He watched her closely, but without a tremor she held out her hand to his and prepared to step on board.

"Wait," he said. "One moment. You remember the story I told you of the elixir. I failed to tell you the end. And when she anointed his eyes and was about to depart, it chanced she saw in the mirror that her beauty had been restored to her. And he opened his eyes and cried out with joy at the sight of her beauty, and folded her in his arms."

She waited, tense but controlled, for him to continue, a dawn of wonder faintly beginning to show in her eyes.

***** the Big Windy — the name of a river

*****It's up to you ... эд. Ваша задача состоит в том, чтобы...

"You are very beautiful, Madge." He paused, then added drily: "I fancy Rex Strang's arms won't remain long empty. Good-bye."

"Grant..." she almost whispered, and in her voice was all the speech that needs no words for understanding.

He stepped into the canoe and put out a slender, nervous hand. She folded both her own hands about his, and bent and kissed it.

He jerked it away, thrust the canoe out from the bank, dipped the paddle in the swift rush of the current.

WORD COMBINATIONS

to shoot a glance (at) бросить быстрый взгляд (на)

to chop wood рубить дрова

to shrug one's shoulders пожимать плечами

from time immemorial с незапамятных времен

to take advantage (of) воспользоваться (чем-л.); злоупотреблять

to make a journey путешествовать; вд. проделать путь

to perform miracles совершать чудеса

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **cease** *v* переставать, прекращать(ся); приостанавливать (часто с герундием): *The shooting ceased. Don't cease working!*

cease-fire *n* прекращение огня
ceaseless *a* непрерывный, непрерыванный

cessation *n* прекращение; остановка, перерыв: *One of the parties demanded the cessation of the talks. cessation of hostilities* прекращение военных действий

2. **solution** *n* 1. раствор. 2. решение, разрешение (вопроса и т. п.): *The solution of these problems is imperative.*

solve *v* решать, разрешать (проблеме и т. п.): *We hope the conference will solve the problem.*

3. **unconscious** *a* 1. не сознающий; без сознания; **to be unconscious of** не сознавать; не видеть, не замечать: *I think he is unconscious of his mistake.* Ant. **conscious** *a* 1. сознающий; в сознании: *I'm conscious of my guilt. He was conscious to the*

last. Он был в сознании до последней минуты. 2. ощущающий: *conscious of cold (pain)*

consciousness *n* 1. сознание; **to lose consciousness** потерять сознание: *He struck his head against something sharp and lost consciousness.* Ant. **to recover consciousness.** 2. сознательность

4. **accuse** *v* обвинять, предъявлять обвинение (of в чем-л.): *He was accused of murder.*

accusation *n* обвинение; обвинительный акт: *That was an unjust accusation and it hurt me terribly to hear it.*

the accused *n* обвиняемый

5. **advantage** *n* 1. преимущество (of, over перед); благоприятное положение: *How can you fail to see the advantage of getting up early? to have the advantage of smb.* иметь преимущество перед кем-л.; **to take advantage of smth.** воспользоваться чем-л.: *Don't take advantage of my weakness!* Ant. **disad-**

- vantage** невыгода, ущерб, неудобство
- advantageous** а благоприятный, выгодный, полезный: *England has the advantageous position of a sea-power.*
6. **impatience** n нетерпение, раздражительность: *He could hardly conceal his impatience.* Ant. **patience**
- impatient** а нетерпеливый, раздражительный; беспокойный, нетерпеливо ожидающий: *The children were impatient to start the game.* Ant. **patient**
- impatiently** adv нетерпеливо, с раздражением: *He drummed his fingers on the table impatiently.* Ant. **patiently**
7. **sacrifice** v приносить в жертву, жертвовать: *She sacrificed her life to save the child.* **to sacrifice oneself** жертвовать собой
- sacrifice** n жертва: *That sacrifice of yours was of no use.* **to make a sacrifice** приносить жертву
- self-sacrifice** n самопожертвование
8. **warn** v предупреждать, предостерегать (of, against против

- чего-л., кого-л.): *We warned them of the coming snow-storm. I warned you against him. He is a dangerous man.*
- warning** n предупреждение, предостережение: *You should not disregard this warning.*
9. **test** n 1. испытание: *The first test of the machine will take place on Monday.* **to put to the test** подвергать испытанию: *The experience put the boy's courage to the test.* **to stand (to bear) the test** выдержать испытание. 2. контрольная работа: *We are going to have a written test in English one of these days.*
- test** v подвергать испытанию, испытывать: *They tested the tool several times.*
10. **tense** а натянутый, напряженный: *The negotiations started in a tense atmosphere. A tense silence followed.*
- tension** n напряжение, напряженное состояние: *international tension; to ease (to relax, to reduce) tension*

EXERCISES

1. a) Give Russian equivalents for the following.

1. He called "Come in", to a knock on the door. 2. He's as good as dead. 3. She dropped her eyes to the man in the bunk. 4. She returned Linday's gaze in silence. 5. Take it that way. 6. A good way of looking at it. 7. There is such a thing as old sake. 8. I'm not playing the Good Samaritan. 9. She wept the beauty out of her face. 10. She seemed to shrink and droop. 11. I'm making a complete job of this. 12. Linday never let up on Strang. 13. I'm done with you. 14. You robbed me of my last words to him.

b) Find English equivalents for the following in the text.

1. Он бросил еще более быстрый взгляд на лицо больного и выпрямился. 2. Убирайтесь отсюда, рубите дрова или займитесь чем-нибудь еще. 3. Ты несправедлив. 4. Случилось так, что человек этот ослеп. 5. В руки ей попал эликсир.

6. Линдей превзошел самого себя в дерзости. 7. Линдей был неугомонным. 8. Одной рукой он держал лодку, а другую протянул ей, чтобы помочь ей войти. 9. Он пристально следил за ней.

2. *The following sentences from the text either contain grammar mistakes or are incomplete. Correct and complete them.*

1. Nothing the matter with me. 2. But if they's a doctor in the outfit he's sure needed. 3. Shoulder dislocated. Right arm broke. An' clawed clean to the bone most all over. 4. That man ain't goin' to die.

3. a) *Paraphrase the italicized parts of the following sentences. Use words and word combinations from the following list:*

advantage, to have the advantage (of), to cease, cease-fire, to ease tension, to exceed, to get impatient, patient, reluctance, reluctant, to sacrifice, to solve, solution, test, to warn

1. No doubt Victor will beat you at chess. He has had much practice and *is in a better position* than you. 2. She said "Yes" in such a tone that we didn't fail to notice that she was *unwilling* to accept our invitation. 3. If it only *stopped* raining now. 4. The children were *losing patience* at the delay of the performance. 5. It's a pity I didn't see you yesterday. I should have *told you not to go to see* the film. 6. *The sick man* was groaning loudly. 7. War must not be a means of *settling* international disputes.

b) *Fill in the blanks with words and word combinations from the above list.*

1. There are many ... of living in a big city; it generally has a lot of libraries, theatres, concert halls and so forth. 2. Can it be true that I should have won the first prize? That ... all my expectations. 3. Again you've made the same mistake. Didn't I ... you time and again to be more careful with your grammar? 4. We insisted on his seeing a doctor. At first he wouldn't listen to us, then little by little he gave in and finally agreed though with 5. These measures were taken ... in the world. 6. The conference was expected to reach a ... of that important problem. 7. Our country put forward a new proposal to ban nuclear

4. a) *Pay attention to the forms of the Subjunctive Mood. Open the brackets. Use Models A and B in complex sentences.*

1. If he (to attempt) to take part in the last contest, he (to win) the first prize. 2. Even if he (to be) angry, he (to keep) his temper. 3. "Mr Brown (not to claim) his rights if he (not to be) sure that he would win the case," he said. 4. Even if the letter (not to be urgent), it (to be dispatched) at once.

b) *Translate into English.*

1. Я бы поговорил с ним об этом, если бы был знаком с ним. 2. Он бы не почувствовал себя обескураженным, если бы его шутка не привела к обратному результату. 3. Даже если бы Борис не высказал своего мнения об этом плане, мы бы тоже выступили против него. 4. Даже если бы эти пункты убрали из соглашения, оно было бы неприемлемо для нас.

c) *In the following conditional clauses change the word order omitting if.*

1. If Robert had not been so absent-minded, no incident would have occurred after the performance. 2. Jean would not have been overcome by the performance so much if she had visited the theatre more often. 3. If Jean had had a watch of her own, she would not have borrowed one from her mother. 4. If Dominguez had not fallen ill, Fowler would not have had to attend those wearisome Press Conferences. 5. If the mould had not been found by Mr Heng's agents, it would have taken longer to expose Pyle.

5. *Complete the situations. Use Models A and B of the Subjunctive.*

1. Unable to bear her anxiety any longer Mrs Hudson exclaimed: "I wish ... It is time ...". 2. Ray looked anxiously into his box and finding it empty thought: "Oh, if only..." 3. Leaving Mr Chou's house Fowler thought: "Had the gates of the warehouse been closed ...". 4. When Fowler entered Mr Chou's room, the family did not pay attention to his coming as if... 5. With growing consternation Jean thought: "Oh, if only..." 6. When the drama worked to its heart-rending end Jean thought: "I wish..." 7. Being very sensitive, Jean would have been carried away by the play even if...

6. a) *Translate into Russian.*

1. I don't want all those nails to hang up the picture, two *will do*, I think. 2. "It *won't do* to play all day," the mother said to her little son. "You have some *sums to do* for tomorrow's classes, and besides I want you to help me *do the room*."

3. It looks like rain, so let's be quick and *have done with* our work in the garden. 4. "The point *has nothing to do with* my report," the lecturer said. "I'd like you to keep to the subject." 5. Bracket knew that if his brother-in-law would not let him have the job he *would be done for*. 6. You'll have *to do without* the conveniences you were used to. 7. He *was doing well* at school. 8. "I can *do with* a cup of milk for supper," she said. 9. I feel I could *do with* a bite. I'm rather hungry.

b) *Replace the italicized parts of the sentences by word combinations with to do.*

1. "After you've behaved so dishonestly I don't want to *have any more business with you*," she said angrily. 2. That *is enough*, thank you, I am quite satisfied with your answer. 3. You have *quite ruined* your overcoat! It is torn and soiled all over. 4. After he *had finished* his work I thought he would *gladly enjoy* some rest. 5. The Great October Socialist Revolution *put an end to* the exploitation of man by man.

c) *Translate into English.*

1. Она совсем не может *обходиться без* очков. 2. Эти туфли *не годятся* для прогулок в горы. 3. Это очень поучительная история, но я не совсем понял, *какое она имеет отношение ко мне!* 4. «Твои глупые вопросы *убивают* меня!» — воскликнула она. 5. *Приведешь в порядок комнату* и можешь идти гулять.

7. *Answer the following questions.*

A

1. Where did the events of the story take place?
2. What brought the newcomer to Dr Linday's camp?
3. How did Madge persuade Linday to attend to Rex?
4. What was the story Linday told Madge?
5. What treatment did Rex Strang receive and what did the final test consist in?
6. Why did Linday choose the time of his departure for telling Madge the end of his story?

B

1. What might have happened if Linday had arrived later than he did?
2. Would Linday have agreed to make the journey had he known that it was Rex who needed his help?

3. Would Linday have known Madge's feelings for Rex without telling her his story?
4. Why would it have been dangerous for Rex' health to know about the arrangement between Madge and Linday?
5. What might have happened if Madge had gone with Linday?
8. *Retell the text according to the following plan.*
 - a) Linday comes to the Little Peco.
 - b) Linday's story about the painter.
 - c) Linday's efforts to restore health to Rex Strang.
 - d) The end of the story.
9. *Retell the story as if you were Madge.*
10. *Topics for oral and written work.*
 - a) Imagine the life of Linday and Madge if they had married again and gone to Lake Geneva.
 - b) Reconstruct Madge's letter to Rex.
 - c) Recall a story from a book you have read where true and self-sacrificing love is described.
 - d) Tell a story by J. London describing the hard life in the North.
11. *Tell the story.*

That Spot

(after Jack London)

I don't think much of Stephen Mackay any more. If ever I meet him again, I shall not be responsible for my actions. It passed beyond me that a man with whom I shared food and blanket should turn out the way he did. I always sized Steve up as a square man, without an iota of anything malicious in his nature. I shall never trust my judgement about men again.

We started down the Klondike in the fall of 1897. We had to buy dogs. That was how we came to get that Spot. Dogs were high, and we paid one hundred and ten dollars for him. He looked worth it. We called him Spot, for on one side, in the thick of the mixed yellow-brown-red-and-dirty-white (that was his prevailing colour) there was a spot of coal-black. He was the strongest-looking brute I ever saw in Alaska, also the most intelligent-looking. Once I sat and looked into that dog's eyes till the shivers ran up and down my spine, what of the intelligence I saw shining out. The eyes never pleaded, they challenged. But in my judgement it was unconscious on his part.

We paid a hundred and ten dollars for Spot from the bottom of our sack, and he wouldn't work. Steve spoke to him

the first time we put him in harness, and he sort of shivered, that was all.

On top of that, Spot was the cleverest thief. We nearly starved to death on the Stewart because of him. He stole from everybody.

At the end of the first week we sold him to the Mounted Police. A week later we woke up in the morning to the bitterest dog-fight we'd ever heard: it was Spot who had come back and was knocking the team into shape. So we made money out of Spot. He was such a fine looker that we had no difficulty in selling him and no one asked for their money back.

But there was no getting rid of Spot. I might have become a millionaire on the Klondike but for Spot. He got on my nerves. I was worn down to skin and bone for that Spot. And in the summer of 1899 I pulled out. But I fixed it up all right with Steve. I left a note for him. At last I could sigh with relief. I was beside myself with joy.

And then I got up one morning and found that Spot chained to the gate-post and holding up the milkman. At the sight of him I almost lost consciousness. I learned later that Steve had been to San-Francisco and had gone to Seattle that very morning without looking me up, so Spot will be with me until I die, for he'll never die.

That is why I am disappointed in Stephen Mackay.

Lesson 7

GRAMMAR: THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. MODEL C

1. a) It is necessary (desirable, requested, impossible, important) that they (*should*) cover the distance in two hours. Необходимо (желательно, невозможно, важно), чтобы они прошли это расстояние за два часа.
b) It is surprising (annoying, strange, disappointing) that they *should have missed* the train. Удивительно (досадно, странно, прискорбно), что они опоздали на поезд.
2. Dominguez suggested (demanded, ordered, proposed, requested, made a suggestion, gave the order) that Fowler (*should*) meet a friend of his. Домингес предложил (потребовал, приказал, попросил), чтобы Фаулер встретился с его другом.
3. Bob feared lest his mother *should reproach* him for being late for dinner again. Боб боялся, как бы мать не стала упрекать его за то, что он опять опоздал к обеду.
4. a) He looked up the spelling of that word in the dictionary lest he *should make* a mistake. Он проверил написание этого слова по словарю, чтобы не сделать ошибки.
b) We rang him up so that he *might come** in time. Мы позвонили ему, чтобы он пришел вовремя.
5. *Should* he come to-morrow I shall confide all my troubles to him. Если (доведись, случись) он придет завтра, я расскажу ему о всех своих неприятностях.
6. Why *should* you worry about such trifles! И зачем только ты беспокоишься из-за таких пустяков!
How *should* I know what he is going to do! Откуда мне знать, что он собирается делать!
Success attend you! Да сопутствует тебе успех!
Long live our Communist Party! Да здравствует наша Коммунистическая партия!

After "so that" **might** + infinitive is used

THE MIRROR OF THE MAGISTRATE

(by G. K. Chesterton)

Gilbert Keith Chesterton (1874—1936), a well-known English essayist and novelist, was born in London in the family of a retired estate agent.

He began his career as a journalist. He was however by no means content to be merely a journalist, and soon poured out a series of books the most significant of which include: "All Things Considered", "Tremendous Trifles"; fiction of a philosophic-fantastic nature: "The Napoleon of Notting Hill", "The Man Who Was Thursday", etc.; novels relating adventures in crime investigation with Father Brown, a quiet little priest as the main character — "The Songs of the Flying Fish", "The Flying Stars", "Ring of Lovers", etc.

G. K. Chesterton's style is gay and brilliant and shot through with paradox.

James Bagshaw and Wilfred Underhill were old friends, and were fond of rambling through the streets at night, talking as they turned corner after corner in the silent labyrinth of the large suburb in which they lived. The former was a professional police detective; the latter was an amateur interested in detection.

The policeman was talking and the amateur was listening.

"Ours is the only trade," said Bagshaw, "in which the professional is always supposed to be wrong. For all that, I'd never deny that we have the disadvantages of going by a rule. Let's take any imaginary case of Sherlock Holmes and Lestrade, the official detective. Sherlock Holmes, let us say, can guess that a total stranger crossing the street is a foreigner, merely because he seems to look for the traffic to go to the right instead of to the left. I'm quite sure Lestrade wouldn't guess anything of the kind. But the policeman, who couldn't guess, might very probably know the man was a foreigner merely because his department has to keep an eye on all foreigners."

"You don't seriously mean to say," cried Underhill incredulously, "that you know anything about strange people in a strange street. That if a man walked out of that house over there, you would know anything about him?"

"I should if he was the householder," answered Bagshaw. "That house is rented by Osric Orm, one of the new poets. This garden wall we're walking under is at the end of the grounds of Sir Humphrey Gwynne, better known as Mr Justice Gwynne. The house next door to it belongs to a wealthy cigar merchant. The house beyond that — did you hear that noise?"

"I heard something," said Underhill, "but I really don't know what it was."

"I know what it was," replied the detective; "it was a rather heavy revolver, fired twice, followed by a cry for help. And it came straight out of the back garden of Mr Justice Gwynne, that paradise of peace and legality."

He looked up and down the street and then added:

"And the only gate of the back garden is half a mile round on the other side. I wish this wall were a little lower, or I were a little lighter; but it's got to be tried."

"It is lower a little farther on," said Underhill, "and there seems to be a tree that looks helpful."

They found a place where the wall seemed to stoop abruptly, almost as if it had half-sunk into the earth. Bagshaw caught the branch of a garden tree and threw one leg over the low wall; and the next moment they stood knee-deep amid the plants of a garden border.

The garden of Mr Justice Gwynne by night was rather a singular spectacle. It was large and lay on the empty edge of the suburb, in the shadow of a tall, dark house that was shuttered and unlighted, at least on the side overlooking the garden. But the garden itself showed a ransom glitter, like that of fading fireworks; as if a giant rocket had fallen in fire among the trees.

"Is he having a party?" asked Underhill. "The garden seems to be illuminated."

"No," answered Bagshaw. "It's a hobby of his. He likes playing with a little plant of electricity that he works from that bungalow over there, where he does his work and keeps his papers."

Bagshaw began suddenly to run.

A moment after Underhill saw what he had seen. The ring of light round the pond was broken by two black stripes, which soon proved themselves to be the long legs of a figure fallen with the head in the pond.

"Come on," cried the detective sharply, "that looks to me like..."

His voice was lost, as he ran on across the wide lawn, making for the pool and the fallen figure. Suddenly he turned at a sharp angle and began to run even more rapidly towards the shadow of the house. Underhill could not imagine what he meant by the altered direction. The next moment Bagshaw returned lugging with him a little struggling man with red hair.

"Underhill," said the detective, "I wish you'd run on and

see what's up by the pool. And now, who are you?" he asked coming to a halt. "What's your name?"

"Michael Flood," said the stranger in a snappy fashion. He was an unnaturally lean little man, with a hooked nose too large for his face. "I've got nothing to do with this. I found him lying dead and I was scared; I only came to interview him for a paper."

"When you interview celebrities for the Press," said Bagshaw, "do you generally climb over the garden wall?"

"An interviewer might very well get over the wall," he said, "for I couldn't make anybody hear at the front door. The servant had gone out."

"How do you know he'd gone out?" asked the detective suspiciously.

"Because," said Flood with an almost unnatural calm, "I'm not the only person who gets over garden walls. It seems just possible that you did it yourself. But, anyhow, the servant did; for I've just this moment seen him drop over the wall, away on the other side of the garden."

"Then why didn't he use the garden door?" demanded the cross-examiner.

"How should I know?" retorted Flood. "Because it was shut, I suppose. But you'd better ask him, not me;¹ he's coming towards the house at this minute."

There was, indeed, another shadowy figure beginning to be visible. He appeared to be making with haste towards a side-door in the house, until Bagshaw halloed to him to halt. He drew nearer to them, very reluctantly.

Bagshaw turned abruptly to the man called Flood.

"Is there anybody in this place who can testify to your identity?"

"The only man I know round here is the priest — Father Brown," growled Flood.

"Neither of you must leave this place," said Bagshaw; and then added to the servant, "but you can go into the house and ring up Father Brown if he would mind coming round here at once."

While the energetic detective was securing the potential fugitives, his companion, at his direction, had hastened on to the actual scene of the tragedy. He had no difficulty in recognizing Sir Humphrey Gwynne. The dead man was in evening dress.

Underhill did not know how long he stood staring down at this figure, when he looked up and saw a group of four figures standing on the bank.

Then he heard Bagshaw saying to the priest:

"I'm glad you can identify this man; but you must realize that he's to some extent under suspicion; he did enter the garden in an irregular fashion."

"Well, I think he's innocent," said the little priest, "because he entered the garden in an irregular fashion. You see, I entered it in a regular fashion myself. I came in by the front door. And I saw something I don't think any of the rest of you have seen. I saw a sort of general smash-up. A big looking-glass broken, and a small palm tree knocked over, and the pot smashed all over the floor. Somehow, it looked to me as if something had happened. And it looks as if there was one person who had nothing to do with it. And that is Mr Michael Flood, who entered the garden over the wall in an irregular fashion, and then tried to leave it in the same irregular fashion. It is his irregularity that makes me believe in his innocence."

"Let us go into the house," said Bagshaw abruptly.

As they passed in at the side door, the servant leading the way, Bagshaw fell back a pace or two and spoke to his friend.

"Something odd about that servant. There seems no doubt he's really Gwynne's servant, apparently the only regular servant he had. But the queer thing is, that he flatly denied that his master was in the garden at all, dead or alive. Said the old judge had gone out to a grand legal dinner and couldn't be home for hours, and gave that as his excuse for slipping out. I can't make him out. He seems to be scared of something."

Entering by the side door, they found themselves at the inner end of the entrance hall. By the light of a single shaded lamp Bagshaw could distinguish the débris of which Brown had spoken. A tall palm had fallen full length, and its dark red pot was shattered into shards. They lay on the carpet, along with fragments of a broken mirror, of which the almost empty frame hung behind them, on the wall at the end of the vestibule.

"It seemed to me," said Father Brown, "that something had happened here."

"Yes, it's pretty clear what happened," assented the detective. "The murderer entered by the front door and found Gwynne; probably Gwynne let him in. There was a death grapple, possibly a chance shot that hit the glass. Gwynne managed to free himself and fled into the garden, where he was pursued and shot finally by the pond."

The other rooms revealed very little.

Eventually they returned to the hall.

"That's rather odd," said Bagshaw sharply. "I thought the front door would be shut, but it's left on the latch."

There was no reply; and they passed out of the front door into the front garden which had at one end a curiously clipped hedge with a hole in it, like a green cave under the shadow of which some broken steps peeped out.

Father Brown strolled up to the hole and ducked his head under it. A few moments after he had disappeared they were astonished to hear his quiet voice in conversation above their heads, as if he were talking to somebody at the top of a tree. The detective followed, and found that the curious covered stairway led to what looked like a broken bridge, overhanging the darker and emptier spaces of the garden.

"This is Mr Orm, the celebrated poet, I understand," said Father Brown.

"Whoever he is," said Bagshaw, "I must trouble him to come with me and answer a few questions."

Mr Osric Orm, the poet, when it came to the answering of questions refused to say anything except that he had intended to call on Sir Humphrey Gwynne, but had not done so because he could not get anyone to answer the bell. As they went out of the front gate into the street, they happened to encounter yet another neighbour, Buller, the cigar merchant from next door. Rather to the surprise of the rest, he hailed his neighbour, the poet, in a matter-of-fact manner, almost as if he had expected to see him.

"Hallo, here we are again," he said, "had a long talk with old Gwynne, I suppose?"

"Sir Humphrey Gwynne is dead," said Bagshaw. "I am investigating the case and I must ask you to explain."

Buller stood as still as the lamp-post beside him, possibly stiffened with surprise.

"I only mean," he said, "that when I passed two hours ago Mr Orm was going in at this gate to see Sir Humphrey."

"He says he hasn't seen him yet," observed Bagshaw, "or even been into the house."

"It's a long time to stand on the door-step," observed Buller. "I've been home since then, been writing letters and came out again to post them."

"You'll have to tell all that later," said Bagshaw.

The trial of Osric Orm for the murder of Humphrey Gwynne which filled the newspapers for so many weeks came back to the enigma of those two empty hours between the time when

Buller saw Orm going in at the garden gate and the time when Father Brown found him still lingering in the garden. He had certainly had the time to commit six murders; for he could give no coherent account of what he was doing. The court followed Bagshaw's clear reconstruction of the struggle in the passage, of which the traces were so evident; indeed, the police had since found the shot that had shattered the glass. Finally, the hole in the hedge to which he had been tracked had very much the appearance of a hiding place. On the other hand, Sir Matthew Blake, the very able counsel for the defence, turned the last argument the other way; asking why any man should entrap himself in a place without possible exit, when it would obviously be much more sensible to slip out into the street. Sir Matthew Blake also made use of the mystery that still rested upon the motive for the murder.

Sir Arthur Travers, the equally brilliant prosecuting counsel, made all possible capital out of the prisoner's stubborn silence, but did not succeed in breaking it.

"Do you mean to tell the jury," he asked, "that you never went to see the deceased gentleman at all?"

"No!" replied Orm shortly.

"You must have been very anxious to see** him. Didn't you wait two whole hours in front of his front door?"

"Yes," replied the other.

"What in the world were you doing for two hours in somebody else's front garden?" insisted the barrister. "Is it a secret?"

"It's a secret from you," answered the poet.

It was upon this suggestion of a secret that Sir Arthur seized in developing his line of accusation. With boldness he turned the very mystery of the motive which was the strongest part of his opponent's case, into an argument for his own.

"Yes," he cried in a vibrating voice, "my learned friend is perfectly right! We do not know the exact reason why this honourable public servant was murdered. If my learned friend falls a victim to the hatred which the hellish powers of destruction feel for the guardians of law, he will be murdered, and he will not know the reason."

"I never knew Sir Arthur so excited," said Bagshaw to his group of companions afterwards. "Some people are saying he went beyond the usual limit and that the prosecutor in a murder

** You must have been very anxious to see him. Вам, должно быть, очень хотелось повидаться с ним.

case oughtn't to be so vindictive. If he lets himself go like that, it's because he thinks he can get a conviction. He must have some very good reason for wanting to convict Orm. Well, Father Brown," he said with a smile, "what do you think of our judicial procedure?"

"Well," replied the priest rather absently, "the thing that struck me most was how different men look in their wigs. You talk about the prosecuting barrister being tremendous. But I happened to see him take his wig off for a minute, and he really looks quite a different man. He's quite bald, for one thing. To tell the truth, I was also thinking how little some kinds of people know about other kinds of people. That barrister thinks it odd that Orm should walk about in a beautiful garden for two hours, with nothing to do. A poet would think nothing of walking about in the same backyard for ten hours if he had a poem to do. Orm's own counsel was quite as stupid. It never occurred to him to ask Orm the obvious question."

"What question do you mean?" asked the other.

"Why, what poem he was making up, of course," said Father Brown rather impatiently. "What line he was stuck at. If there were any educated people in courts who know what literature is, they would have known well enough whether he had had anything genuine to do."

"That's all very well," replied the detective, "but why did he hide? Why did he climb up that crooked little stairway and stop there?"

"Why, because it led nowhere, of course," cried Father Brown explosively. "And then there was another thing. Don't you know that everything has, for an artist, one aspect or angle that is exactly *right*? Well, the view of that illuminated garden from that bridge was the right view of it. It was like looking *down* at heaven and seeing all the stars growing on trees. But do you expect him to tell you that in the witness box? What would you say to him if he did?"

"You talk as if you were a poet yourself," said Bagshaw. "You may know more about artistic temperament than I do but it's equally true that he might have committed the crime. And who else could have committed it?"

"Have you thought about the servant?" asked Father Brown, reflectively. "He told a rather queer story."

"Ah," cried Bagshaw quickly, "you think he did it, after all."

"I'm quite sure he didn't," replied the other. "I only asked if you'd thought about his queer story. He only went out for

some trifle. But he went out by the garden door and came back over the garden wall. In other words, he left the door open, but he came back to find it shut. Why? Because Somebody Else had already passed out that way."

"The murderer," muttered the detective doubtfully. "Do you know who he was?"

"I know what he looked like," answered Father Brown quietly. He looked like Sir Humphrey Gwynne."

"What the devil do you mean?" demanded Bagshaw. "Gwynne was lying dead with his head in the pond."

"Oh, yes," said Father Brown. "Let's go back to that theory of yours. You suppose the murderer came in at the front door, met the judge in the hall, struggling with him and breaking the mirror; that the judge then retreated into the garden, where he was finally shot. Somehow it doesn't sound natural to me. Surely, he would be more likely to retreat into the house? His gun was there; his telephone was there; his servant, so far as he knew, was there. Even the nearest neighbours were in that direction. Why should he stop to open the garden door and go out alone on the deserted side of the house?"

"But we know he did go out of the house," replied his companion, puzzled. "He was found in the garden."

"He never went out of the house, because he never was in the house," said Father Brown. "Not that evening, I mean. He was sitting in that bungalow. He was trying to run across to the house, and the telephone, when the murderer shot him beside the pond."

"But what about the pot and the palm and the broken mirror?" cried Bagshaw. "Why, it was you who found them! It was you yourself who said there must have been a struggle in the hall."

The priest blinked rather painfully. "Did I?" he muttered. "What I think I said was that something had happened in the hall. And something did happen; but it wasn't a struggle."

"Then what broke the mirror?" asked Bagshaw.

"A bullet fired by the criminal," answered Brown. "The fragments of falling glass were quite enough to knock over the pot and the palm."

"Well, what else could he have been firing at except Gwynne?" asked the detective.

"In one sense, of course, he was firing at Gwynne. But Gwynne wasn't there to be fired at. The criminal was alone in the hall. Imagine the looking-glass at the end of the passage, before it was broken. In the hall light it would look like the

end of the passage. A man reflected in it would look like a man coming from inside the house. It would look like the master of the house — if only the reflection were a little like him.”

“Stop a minute,” cried Bagshaw. “I believe I begin...”

“You begin to see why all the suspects in this case must be innocent. Not one of them could possibly have mistaken his own reflection for old Gwynne. Orm would have known at once that his bush of yellow hair was not a bald head. Flood would have seen his own red head, and the servant his own red waistcoat. Besides, they’re all short; none of them could have thought his own image was a tall, thin, old gentleman in evening dress. We want another, equally tall and thin, to match him. That’s what I meant by saying that I knew what the murderer looked like. And I am going to argue,” the priest said, “the very thing that you said was so ludicrous and impossible.”

“What do you mean?”

“I’m going to base the defence,” said Father Brown, “on the fact that the prosecuting counsel has a bald head. You’ve been following the movements of a good many people in the business. The man whose movements seem to have been rather forgotten is the dead man himself. His servant was quite honestly astonished at finding his master had returned. His master had gone to a great dinner of all the leaders of the legal profession, but had left it abruptly and come home. He was not ill, for he summoned no assistance; he had almost certainly quarrelled with some leader of the legal profession. He returned, and shut himself up in the bungalow, where he kept all his private documents about treasonable practices. But the leader of the legal profession, who knew there was something against him in those documents, was thoughtful enough to follow his accuser home; he also being in evening dress, but with a pistol in his pocket. Nobody could ever have guessed it except for the mirror. By the way, there was one very true thing that you said about him, that Sir Arthur must have some good reason for wanting to get Orm hanged.”

A week later the priest met the police detective once more.

“Sir Arthur Travers is dead,” said Bagshaw briefly.

“Ah!” said the other, “you meant that he...”

“Yes,” said Bagshaw, “he shot at the same man again, but not in a mirror.”

NOTES

1. But you **had better** ask him, not me. Но вам лучше бы спросить у него, а не у меня.

Had better followed by an infinitive without **to** has the modal meaning of advice.

You had better go there at once. Вам бы лучше пойти туда сразу же.

Compare: **I would rather (sooner)** followed by an infinitive without **to** or by a clause with the predicate in the form of the Subjunctive (Model B) expresses wish or preference.

I would rather go there at once. Я бы лучше пошел (я бы предпочел пойти) туда сразу же.

I would rather (sooner) he went there at once. Мне бы хотелось (лучше бы, я бы предпочел), чтобы он пошел туда сразу же.

WORD COMBINATIONS

for all that несмотря на это

to go by a rule руководствоваться установленным правилом

to keep an eye on smb. следить за кем-л.

the house next door соседний дом

to come to a halt остановиться

to lead the way вести за собой; эд. идти впереди

to make use of smth. воспользоваться чем-л.

to let oneself go давать себе волю, распускаться

for one thing во-первых

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **legal** *a* 1. юридический, правовой: *He had to take legal action.* 2. законный, узаконенный, легальный: *Such actions are quite legal.* Ant. **illegal**

legally *adv* законно

legality *n* законность, легальность: *We can't doubt the legality of his action.*

legalize *v* узаконивать, легализовать: *Later they legalized the sale of tobacco.*

2. **identity** *n* 1. идентичность, тождественность: *The commune stressed the identity of their views.* **identity card** удостоверение личности

identical *a* 1. тот же самый: *This is the identical paper he signed.*

2. одинаковый, идентичный, тождественный (**with**): *Our proposals were identical.*

identify *v* 1. опознавать, устанавливать личность: *M. Vigot wanted Fonler to identify the body.* 2. отождествлять; солидаризироваться (**with**): *We could not identify ourselves with such a policy.*

3. **secure** *v* 1. охранять, гарантировать, обеспечивать, страховать: *We must secure peace.* 2. обеспечивать безопасность; укреплять (город и т. п.): *They built a dam to secure the city against floods.* 3. брать под стражу: *They were ordered to secure the two fugitives.* 4. до-

ставать, получать: *I'll try to secure tickets for the play.*
secure *a* 1. безопасный, надежный: *A savings-bank is a secure place to keep one's money in.* 2. прочный, надежный: *Is the lock secure?*

security *n* 1. безопасность, надежность: *Don't doubt the security of the place.* 2. обеспечение, гарантия, залог: *The security of peace is our goal.* the Security Council Совет Безопасности

4. **pursue** *v* 1. преследовать; гнаться; бежать за: *The dogs pursued the fox until it was shot.* 2. преследовать (цель); следовать по намеченному пути: *to pursue the policy of peace*

pursuer *n* преследователь

pursuit *n* преследование; погоня; **in pursuit of** в поисках; в погоне за, преследуя: *In pursuit of his object he knew no obstacles.*

5. **observe** *v* 1. наблюдать, замечать: *From here the astronomers observed the sky.* 2. соблюдать (законы и т. н.): *This is a rule, and rules must be observed.* 3. заметить, сказать: *He observed that the weather was changing for the better.*

observant *a* наблюдательный

observation *n* 1. наблюдение, наблюдательность; **to keep under observation** держать под наблюдением. 2. замечание, высказывание: *They made some observation about the agenda.*

observer *n* обозреватель, комментатор

observance *n* соблюдение (законов, принципов и т. д.): *The Charter requires observance of the principles and purposes of the organisation.*

observatory *n* обсерватория

6. **commit** *v* 1. предавать; **to commit somebody for trial** предавать кого-л. суду. 2. совершать (преступление и т. н.): **to commit suicide** покончить жизнь самоубийством; **to com-**

mit an error совершать ошибку; **to commit a crime** совершать преступление; **to commit oneself** принимать на себя обязательство, связывать себя (то чем-л.): *He seemed reluctant to commit himself to helping them.*

commitment *n* обязательство:

They seem to have forgotten about their commitments.

7. **honourable** *a* почетный: *He is one of our most honourable citizens.* **You must be proud of the honourable duty laid on you.** Ant. **dishonourable**

honour *n* 1. честь, слава: *It is a high honour to be entrusted with such work.* **in honour of** в честь (кого-л., чего-л.): *The child was given his name in honour of his grandfather.*

2. почет, уважение, почтение: **to give (to pay) honour to smb.** оказывать кому-л. уважение, почтение. Ant. **dishonour**

3. pl. награды, почести, ордена: *He was given all military honours.*

8. **law** *n* 1. закон, правило: *Who doesn't know Newton's law of gravitation!* **to keep within the law** придерживаться закона; **to break the law** нарушать закон. 2. юр. право, юриспруденция; **international law** международное право; **to read law** изучать право. 3. профессия юриста; **to go in for law** избрать профессию юриста; **to practise law** быть юристом. 4. суд, судебный процесс; **to be at law with smb.** судиться с кем-л.; **to take the law into one's own hands** расправиться без суда

lawful *a* законный: *We only defend our lawful rights.* Ant. **unlawful**

lawyer *n* адвокат, юрист

9. **puzzle** *v* 1. приводить в затруднение; ставить в тупик; озадачивать: *His words puzzled me.*

puzzle *n* 1. недоумение, затруднение, замешательство: *His face showed the puzzle he felt.* 2. вопрос, ставящий в тупик; загадка, головоломка: *We found them at a cross-word puzzle.*

puzzling *a* приводящий в замешательство, сбивающий с толку: *The problem was a puzzling one.*

puzzlement *n* замешательство, смущение

10. **match** *v* 1. подбирать под пару, под стать; сочетать: *a well-(an ill-) matched couple* хорошая (плохая) пара. 2. подходить (*под пару*), соот-

ветствовать: *I'll buy gloves to match this hat. Do these colours match?* 3. противопоставлять; противостоять; состязаться: *No one could match him in shooting.*

match *n* 1. человек или вещь, подходящие под пару; ровня: *In telling lies she had no match.* 2. состязание, матч: *a football match.* 3. равносильный, достойный противник; *to meet (to find) one's match* встретить достойного противника. 4. брак, партия: *This young man is a fine match for your daughter.*

EXERCISES

1. a) *Give Russian equivalents for the following.*

1. He appeared to be making with haste towards the side door in the wall. 2. As they passed in at the side door, the servant leading the way, Bagshaw fell back a pace or two and spoke to his friend. 3. They happened to encounter yet another neighbour. 4. He hailed his neighbour, the poet, in a matter-of-fact manner, almost as if he had expected to see him. 5. Sir Matthew ... turned the argument the other way asking why any man should entrap himself in a place without possible exit, when it would obviously be much more sensible to slip out into the street. 6. Do you mean to tell the jury that you never went to see the deceased gentleman at all? 7. You talk about the prosecuting barrister being so tremendous. 8. He thinks it odd that Orm should walk about in a beautiful garden. 9. He would be more likely to retreat into the house.

b) *Find English equivalents for the following in the text.*

1. Я увидел нечто такое, чего, как мне кажется, еще не видел никто из вас. 2. Через несколько мгновений после того как он скрылся, они с удивлением слышали, как он спокойно беседует с кем-то у них над головой. 3. «Долго же вы простояли перед дверью!» сказал Буллер. 4. Вот за этот намек на какую-то тайну и ухватился сэр Артур, развивая свою линию обвинения. 5. Другими словами, он оставил дверь открытой, но вернувшись, обнаружил, что она закрыта. 6. Он вовсе не выходил из дома, потому что он в доме и не

был! 7. Ведь это вы сказали, что в прихожей, вероятно, произошла схватка.

2. a) *Paraphrase the italicized parts of the following sentences. Use words and word combinations from the following list:*

to commit oneself, to go in for law, identical, to identify, legal, to match, a match, to observe, observance, to pursue, in pursuit of, to puzzle

1. Can you *recognize and state who this man is*? 2. They have taken action *authorized by law*. 3. The newspapers emphasized that the two parties had *similar* views on the point. 4. I couldn't understand why my question should *perplex* her. 5. Everyone must *respect* laws. 6. He gave up medicine and decided *to become a lawyer*. 7. "Gestler is, no doubt, an excellent shoemaker," Gerald *remarked* to John. 8. You can't marry this man. We'll find *someone who would suit you well*.

b) *Fill in the blanks with words and word combinations from the above list.*

1. Our government ... a policy aimed at reducing international tension. 2. I don't know what to think. This letter ... me. 3. If I were you I'd put on another tie ... your suit. 4. Strict ... of the rules of procedure is demanded from the participants of the assembly. 5. ... his aims he would stop at nothing! 6. We had to stop the delivery of the goods as the firm did not ... some of the clauses of the contract. 7. I wish you wouldn't promise to help Ann in her work. You'd better not ... since you have plenty of work of your own.

3. a) *Add the negative prefixes ir-, il- and im- to the following words and translate them into Russian.*

regular, responsible, responsibility, respective, reproachable; legal, legality, legitimate, logical; memorial, measurable, mobile, mortal, moral

b) *Add the adjective forming suffix -y to the following nouns and translate the words into Russian.*

snow, wind, sleep, shadow, rock, sketch

4. *Use the following word combinations in situations of your own.*

when it comes to... (+ a gerund), to lead the way, to keep an eye (on), to make use of, the house next door, to go by a rule, for all that, for one thing

5. *Translate the following sentences into Russian paying attention to the Consequential Infinitive.*

1. He left the door open, but he came back *to find* it shut.
2. The doctor turned round *to see* his patient stagger back to his bed. 3. He left his native town never *to return* to it. 4. Robert turned his pockets inside out only *to find* them empty.

6. *Translate into English. Use had better or would rather (sooner).*

1. Я бы предпочел, чтобы ты не судил о людях по внешности. 2. Грейс подумала, что она скорее воспользуется этой возможностью и подпишется своим именем, нежели примет участие в глупой шутке над Рэем. 3. «Ты бы лучше взяла серые перчатки, они подойдут к твоей шляпе», — сказала ей сестра. 4. Я бы лучше купил себе новый костюм, вместо того чтобы отдавать переделывать старый.

7. a) *Translate the following sentences into Russian. Pay attention to the use of the Subjunctive Mood, Model C.*

1. It is necessary that you (should) read this book in the original. 2. It is requested that everybody (should) be present at the meeting. 3. It is desirable that you (should) discuss the matter with him in complete confidence. 4. It is strange that they should still be standing at the gate. 5. It is annoying that your arguments should cut no ice with them. 6. It is disappointing that they should have fallen out. 7. It is impossible that he should have laid the blame on you. 8. Isn't it surprising that he should have been waiting here since early morning? 9. The Commander-in-Chief demanded that the troops (should) be withdrawn from that territory. 10. Our delegation moved a proposal that the countries concerned (should) resume negotiations as soon as possible. 11. We urge that the agreement (should) include those provisions. 12. The delegate insisted that the resolution (should) be passed immediately. 13. Dominguez proposed that Fowler (should) get acquainted with his friend Mr Chou. 14. Should you fail to manage the work alone, I am always at your disposal. 15. Should he blame you, you must explain your reasons. 16. In case he should take me into his confidence, I'll do my best to help him in every possible way. 17. How should I know why he has not reserved seats for us? 18. I can't make out why you should encourage him in all his little fancies. 19. Why should I be responsible for the work? I have very little to do with it.

8. *Open the brackets. Use Model C of the Subjunctive.*

1. It is necessary that the problem (to solve) as soon as possible. 2. The troops were given the order that fire (to cease) immediately. 3. Why he (to accuse) us for the failure of the experiment? 4. Is it possible that they (to fail) to reach a solution of this problem again? 5. We fear lest they (to take advantage) of the setbacks in our work. 6. We insisted that he (to admit) to membership of the club since he had taken an active part in the preparatory work. 7. It is desirable that all the members of the club (to warn) about the next meeting in good time. 8. Why you (to blame) me for something I haven't done? 9. In case the driver (to exceed) the speed limit he will be fined. 10. He had to take a taxi as he was afraid lest he (to miss) the train. 11. He feared lest the boys (to take) him for a coward. 12. Dominguez wrote the Chinese name down so that Fowler (to remember) it. 13. Mr Heng lifted his torch so that Fowler (to see) the drum better.

9. *Paraphrase the following sentences. Use Model C of the Subjunctive.*

1. Now it was necessary for Fowler to attend Press Conferences. 2. It was unusual for him to confide his secrets to anybody. 3. If he blames you, you must explain your reasons. 4. The officer suggested our unit's covering the retreat of the regiment. 5. It was annoying for him to have completely forgotten her address. 6. The chairman recommended withdrawing the last objection the delegate made. 7. It was important for the Americans in Saigon to brief the visiting Congressmen and show them the situation in the wrong light. 8. Isn't it strange for him to have signed the letter with a fictitious name? 9. The workers insisted on the Committee being responsible for that work. 10. We were afraid that he would fail to deliver the message in time. 11. As Fowler found it difficult to remember Chinese names his assistant wrote Mr Chou's name down for Fowler not to forget it.

10. *Make up sentences with the following words and word combinations (use Model C of the Subjunctive).*

1. Is it possible that	such pictures, to appeal to her?
	they, to lay the responsibility on
	me?
	they, not to consider him a respec-
	table man?

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 2. I suggest | you, to accept the invitation.
he, not to reject their plan.
he, to confide his trouble to his friends.
the attempt, to repeat one of these days. |
| 3. We had to do it lest | we, to get into trouble.
we, to be late for the performance.
you, to reproach us.
the facts, to falsify. |
| 4. Please, ring me up so that | I, to know that you've returned safe and sound.
we, to arrange everything in good time.
I, to learn the results of your experiment.
we, to talk the matter over. |
| 5. Why on earth | I, to reproach you?
he, to blame me?
you, ever to bother me?
it, to seem so strange to you?
I, to take my words back? |

11. *Translate into English using the Subjunctive (Model C).*

1. Домингес предложил, чтобы Фаулер навестил его друга. 2. Желательно, чтобы письмо было доставлено как можно скорее. 3. Почему бы мне не называть вещи своими именами? 4. Сэм и Билл бежали всю дорогу домой, боясь, как бы мальчишка не догнал их. 5. Американское посольство потребовало, чтобы Пайл проинструктировал вновь приехавших американцев о положении во Вьетнаме. 6. «В случае, если в Сайгоне произойдут взрывы, я хочу, чтобы вы знали, кого винить», — сказал Хенг. 7. Необходимо, чтобы вы сказали свое мнение по этому вопросу. 8. Случись ему обратиться к нам за помощью, обеспечьте его необходимым материалом. 9. Из штаба пришел приказ, чтобы документ о прекращении военных действий был подписан немедленно. 10. Возможно ли, что он снова совершил ту же ошибку? 11. Будь я на вашем месте, я не связал бы себя таким обязательством. 12. Если бы не сыщик-любитель, осудили бы невиновных. 13. Боюсь, как бы эта телеграмма не поставила их в тупик. 14. Незнакомец, проделавший долгий путь в поисках доктора, настаивал на том, чтобы Линдей отправился с ним и помог его

другу. 15. Линдей опасался, как бы человек, пострадавший от пантеры, не умер до того, как они доберутся до хижины. 16. Мэдж была вне себя от отчаяния: она боялась, как бы Линдей не отказался лечить Рекса. 17. Едва сдерживая себя, Линдей ответил ей: «Почему бы, собственно, мне беспокоиться о человеке, укравшем у меня жену?» 18. Линдей предупредил Мэдж, чтобы она ничего не говорила Рексу о данном ею обещании, так как было очень важно, чтобы не возникло никаких помех для его выздоровления. 19. Линдей был неугомонным: он без конца массирует Рекса и требовал, чтобы больной расслабил мышцы; в тысячный раз он задавал себе вопрос: «Почему, собственно, я все еще не удовлетворен тем, что сделал?»

12. a) *Translate into Russian.*

1. Through the dense fog we could not *make out* the outlines of the tower. 2. "Look at Johnny's drawings!" the teacher said appreciatingly. "I am sure this boy will *make a good painter!*" 3. This being his first novel, we must *make allowance for* its deficiencies. 4. "What an awful *mess* you have *made of* your room!" Alec's mother cried seeing all his things thrown about on the floor. 5. "Nell had brilliant opportunities," the old woman sighed, "but she never used them and has *made a mess of* her life." 6. They moved a little to *make room for* the lady but she told them not to bother as she would rather stand. 7. Being unable to find a job as a physicist, Eric had to *make a living* washing dishes, sweeping floors, etc. 8. Watson was wondering what he was *to make of* Sherlock Holmes' strange ways. 9. Brown is said to have *made a fortune* in this line of trade. 10. Before confiding his scheme to Bob, Sam *made sure* there were no people about to overhear their talk. 11. I wish I had more time to see the town. But I'll try and *make the most (make the best)* of the two hours I've got. 12. I wish I knew how *to make up for* the wrong I've done you. 13. The children *made up* a little poem to welcome home their mother.

b) *Replace the italicized parts of the following sentences by word combinations with to make.*

1. I really can't *understand* the man. 2. John said that I needn't worry as he would do the work for me but on returning I found he had only *brought everything in disorder* and I had to do it all over again. 3. It was getting dark and we could not *see distinctly* the sign above the gate. 4. True, he didn't behave quite well. But his youth must be *taken into consideration*.

5. With a little practice this young man will *become* a good interpreter. 6. She waved her hand and *started* for the door. 7. "Now again, you've *spoilt* the whole business," she cried in despair. 8. I'll try to *compensate* your losses somehow. 9. Such a trifle can *ruin* one's career! 10. He tried many professions to *earn his livelihood*.

c) *Translate into English. Use word combinations with to make.*

1. «Необходимо, чтобы мы *освободили место* для письменного стола», — сказал отец. 2. «Как я могу *искупить свою вину* перед Робертом?» — думала Джин. 3. Уходя из гостиницы, он *удостоверился*, что дверь заперта. 4. Она часто *выдумывала* смешные истории, чтобы позабавить детей. 5. В юности Джеку Лондону приходилось *зарабатывать себе на жизнь*, работая на консервной фабрике. 6. В то время многие отправлялись на Клондайк в надежде найти золото и *нажить себе состояние*. 7. Томми решил *наилучшим образом использовать* ту небольшую сумму денег, которую родители дали ему на поездку.

13. *Answer the following questions.*

1. Who were James Bagshaw and Wilfred Underhill?
2. Why did both men climb over Judge Gwynne's garden wall?
3. What was peculiar about the garden?
4. What other people appeared on the scene of the murder?
5. How did it come about that Father Brown was summoned to the place?
6. What did Father Brown discover in the hall?
7. What did the men believe to have taken place there?
8. What seemed odd to the men about the servant's assertions?
9. Why was Osric Orm suspected of having committed the crime?
10. How did the counsel for the defence and the prosecuting counsel conduct the case?
11. How did Father Brown account for the poet's strange behaviour in the garden and during the trial?
12. How did the mirror in the hall come to be broken, and who was the real murderer?
13. What proves that Father Brown was a very observant man?
14. *Prove that the following statements are wrong. Begin with "It's not true. I gather from the text that ...; I'm afraid it is wrong..."*, etc.

1. Bagshaw and Underhill were the only persons who got into Gwynne's garden over the wall that night.
2. Bagshaw found the vestibule with its long mirror and the palm tree in its red pot in perfect order.
3. Osric Orm and Buller had been talking for two hours on the stairway in Gwynne's dark garden before Father Brown saw them.
4. Osric Orm was seen stepping out of Gwynne's house.
5. Developing his line of prosecution Sir Arthur sought justice and wanted to convict the real criminal.
6. Osric Orm looked like Humphrey Gwynne; he was equally tall and thin and his head was also bald.

15. *Retell the text according to the following plan.*

- a) Conversation between Bagshaw and Underhill.
- b) Bagshaw and Underhill in Humphrey Gwynne's garden.
- c) People suspected of having committed the crime.
- d) The state of things discovered in the vestibule.
- e) The trial.
- f) Father Brown reconstructs the crime.
- g) The end of Sir Arthur Travers.

16. *Use the following words and word combinations to describe a trial:*

to investigate a case, counsel for the defence, the prosecuting counsel, a judge, a jury, a barrister, an opponent, a suspect, to accuse, to commit a crime, to give evidence, to witness, a witness-box, to testify to somebody's identity, to identify, the deceased, a motive, to fall a victim to, judicial procedure, to cross-examine, to be under suspicion, to sentence, to find innocent (guilty)

17. *Read the story, guess the end and retell it, using the words given at the end.*

The Lady or the Tiger?

A king of olden times had decreed that every person accused of crime should be placed in a vast amphitheatre, where, in the presence of the king, the court, and the assembled multitude he was compelled to open one of two doors which were exactly alike and side by side. He might open whichever door he pleased, but had absolutely no guidance or suggestion to direct him. Behind one door was a hungry, man-eating tiger

and behind the other a beautiful lady, dressed as a bride. If he opened the door which concealed the tiger he was presumed to be guilty and was at once devoured, if he opened the door which concealed the lady, he was held to have proved his innocence and was immediately married to her with great rejoicings. No previous ties were allowed to be an obstacle to this marriage. The disposition of the lady and of the tiger behind the two doors was liable to change on every occasion and was, of course, a profound secret.

Now it happened that a young courtier of humble rank won the love of the king's daughter; and being suspected by the king was imprisoned and brought to trial in the arena. The princess, by means of gold and a woman's determination, discovered behind which doors the lady and the tiger were to be placed. She went through a long and agonizing conflict between horror at the thought of her lover's destruction by the tiger and jealousy at the idea of his possession by another maid of honour of the court. At length her mind was made up. On the day of the trial she managed to signal to her lover to open the right-hand door. This he immediately did. The author does not undertake to say what followed, but leaves the question to his readers: "Who came out of the opened door — the lady or the tiger?"

(to threaten, to slip, to imagine, at the sight of, anxiety, to hesitate, courage, to warn, to lose, appealing, to stir, to sacrifice, to save, safety, relief, to owe one's life to)

REVISION EXERCISES

The Subjunctive Mood

1. *Replace the infinitives in brackets by Model A, B, C of the Subjunctive.*

1. But for the noise made by two shots and a cry for help Bagshaw and Underhill (not to climb) over the wall into Gwynne's garden. 2. The garden showed a random glitter as if Gwynne (to have) a party. 3. The gate of the garden being a mile away from them, Bagshaw wished the wall (to be) a little lower and he (to be) a little lighter. 4. It was incredulous that a murder (to commit) in the garden of Mr Justice Gwynne, that paradise of peace and legality. 5. If Gwynne (not to go) to a

legal dinner his servant (not to slip) out of the house. 6. The prosecuting counsel insisted that Orm (to give) a coherent account of what he was doing during two hours in Gwynne's garden. 7. "Why any man (to entrap) himself in a place without possible exit when it is much more sensible that he (to slip) out into the street?" asked the counsel for the defence. 8. Hadn't Sir Arthur once taken off the wig, Father Brown (not to notice) the resemblance between Sir Arthur and Gwynne. 9. The view of the illuminated garden from the bridge was very beautiful as though all the stars (to fall) and (to hang) on the trees. 10. Sir Arthur was afraid lest his treasonable practice (to expose). 11. "It's time there (to be) educated people in courts who know what literature is," thought Father Brown. 12. "How I (to explain) to them why I spent two hours on the stairway?" thought Orm. "They (not to believe) me." 13. "Gwynne (to summon) assistance if it (to be) his illness that caused him to leave the party so abruptly," thought Father Brown.

2. *Complete the sentences. Use Model A, B, C of the Subjunctive.*

1. Hadn't Sir Humphrey Gwynne and Sir Arthur Travers quarrelled at that legal party... 2. But for Sir Arthur's treasonable practice... 3. It was vitally essential for Sir Arthur that the poet... 4. Michael Flood wouldn't have been committed for the trial even if Father Brown... 5. The prosecuting counsel tried his best to get the poet convicted because he was afraid lest... 6. The looking-glass being at the end of the passage, a man reflected in it looked as if... 7. The poet having no motives for the murder, nobody could understand why...

3. *Translate into English.*

1. Если бы не Браун, никто бы не засвидетельствовал личность Флада. 2. Когда Бэгшоу поймал Флада, последний, видя, что его подозревают, подумал: «Жаль, что я пришел брать интервью сегодня! Если бы только я выбрал для этого другой день!» 3. Даже если бы Бэгшоу проследил за всеми действиями Гвинна в тот вечер, он бы ни о чем не догадался, так как он не был наблюдателем. 4. Понимая, что улики были против него, он опасался, как бы его не осудили. 5. Я бы выбрал синюю шляпу, она подошла бы к твоему пальто. 6. Он настаивал на том, чтобы были приняты меры безопасности. 7. Детям давно пора спать. 8. Хотелось бы мне понять, что он за человек. 9. Предупреди я их вовремя, несчастья не случилось бы. 10. Жаль, что вы не воспользовались такой возможностью. 11. Она взглянула на меня удивленно, как будто

мои слова озадачили ее. 12. Просто удивительно, что ты до такой степени не наблюдателен. 13. Странно, что он преследует этого беднягу с таким упорством. 14. Я повесил объявление на двери деканата, чтобы все студенты прочитали его. 15. Возможно ли, чтобы она совершила преступление? 16. Если бы не этот футбольный матч, я бы проводил вас. 17. Боюсь, как бы ее приезд не нарушил наши планы.

Lesson 8

GRAMMAR: MODAL VERBS *MUST*, *TO BE (TO)*, *TO HAVE (TO)*

A. *must*

1. "I am sorry, Celia, but I *must go*. My community sent me here," Lanny said. «Не сердись, Силия. Я должен ехать. Община послала меня сюда», — сказал Лэнни.

(obligation)

2. I told Fred he *must stay* and *wait* another day. Я сказал Фреду, что он должен остаться и подождать еще день.

(indirect command)

3. This is serious, you *mustn't joke* about it. Это серьезно. Над этим шутить нельзя.

(prohibition)

4. a) "James *must be* fifty," she said. «Джеймсу, наверное, пятьдесят лет», — сказала она.

- b) "Where is she?" Ray thought. "She *must be dancing* in the hall." «Где же она?» — подумал Рэй. «Она, должно быть, танцует в зале».

- c) Give him a ring. He *must have arrived* by now. Позвоните ему. Он, наверное, уже приехал.

(probability bordering on assurance)

B. *to have (to)*

1. Now that his assistant was ill it was Fowler who *had to attend* wearisome press conferences. Теперь, когда его помощник заболел, Фаулеру самому приходилось присутствовать на утомительных пресс-конференциях.

2. Would you care for a walk or *do you have to study* (*have you got to study*)? * Ты не хочешь погулять? Или тебе надо заниматься?

* The form **have got to** is preferred in colloquial speech, if the action is momentary.

3. The train arrived on time, so we *did not have to wait*. Поезд прибыл вовремя, так что нам не пришлось ждать.
4. "How can I get to Red Square?" "You *will have to turn* left and walk two more blocks." — Как мне пройти на Красную площадь? — Вам придется повернуть налево и пройти еще два квартала.

(necessity created by circumstances)

C. to be (to)

1. a) Old Dorset *was to leave* his answer to Sam's letter at the bottom of a tree: Старик Дорсет должен был оставить ответ на письмо Сэма у подножия дерева.

(planned action)

- b) Why are you late? You *were to have come* an hour ago. Почему вы опоздали? Вы должны были прийти час тому назад.

(the action was planned but did not take place)

2. a) The contents of this package *are to be dissolved* in a glassful of water. Содержимое пакета растворить в стакане воды.
- b) What *am I to do* now? Что мне теперь делать?

(prescription, order, advice)

3. This fact *is not to be ignored*. Этот факт нельзя игнорировать.

(prohibition or insistent advice)

4. George wondered what *was to become* of his son in future. Джордж думал, что же выйдет из его сына.

(probability, inevitability)

5. a) "I know the village is not far from here on the opposite bank of the river, but how *am I to get* there if there is no boat?" the traveller inquired. «Я знаю, что деревня недалеко отсюда, на другом берегу реки, но как мне добраться туда, если нет лодки?» — спросил путник.
- b) The boy learned that books by H. G. Wells *were to be found* at a little bookstore not far from the library. Мальчик узнал, что книги Г. Уэллса можно достать в маленькой книжной лавке недалеко от библиотеки.

(possibility)

- Compare: 1. Sam *had to go* there. (And he actually went there.)
2. Sam *was to go* there. (It is not known whether he went there or not.)
3. Sam *was to have gone* there. (Sam did not go there though he had planned it.)

THE FALL OF EDWARD BARNARD

(by W. S. Maugham)

William Somerset Maugham was born in 1874 and lived in Paris until he was ten. He graduated from Heidelberg University. He started working as a physician, but the success of his first novel, "Liza of Lambeth" (1897), won him over to letters, and with "The Moon and Sixpence" (1919) his reputation as a novelist was assured.

His position as one of the most successful playwrights on the London stage was consolidated simultaneously.

His fame as a short-story writer began with "The Trembling of a Leaf", subtitled "Little Stories of the South Sea Islands", in 1921, after which he published more than ten collections.

W. Somerset Maugham travelled in almost every part of the world. He died in 1966.

For a fortnight on the boat that brought him from Tahiti to San-Francisco Bateman Hunter had been thinking of the story he had to tell, but in a few hours now he would be in Chicago and his conscience was not at ease. He was uncertain that he had done all that was possible. A pang seized him when he remembered that he must deal so bitter a blow to Isabel and anger flamed up in his heart when he thought of Edward Barnard.

But at last the train steamed in to Chicago and he exulted when he saw the long street of grey houses. He was at home. And he was glad that he had been born in the most important city in the United States.

His father had come to meet him. His automobile was waiting for them.

As soon as Bateman was alone in his room he asked for a number on the telephone. His heart leaped when he heard the voice that answered him.

"Unless you have anything better to do perhaps you will dine with us? I suppose that you are full of news... Good bye."

Isabel rang off.

At dinner, at which beside himself and Isabel no one was present but her father and mother, he watched her guide the conversation into the channels of an urbane small talk. In her veins flowed the best blood in Chicago. The dining-room was a fitting frame to her fragile beauty, for Isabel had caused the house, a replica of a palace at Venice, to be furnished by an English expert in the style of Louis XV.

When they went out of the dining-room Isabel said to her mother: "I am going to take Bateman to my den. We have various things to talk about."

They sat down in front of a log fire.

"Now what have you to say to me?" she asked.

"I hardly know how to begin."

"Is Edward Barnard coming back?"

"No."

There was a long silence before Bateman spoke again and with each of them it was filled with many thoughts.

It had all begun long ago when he and Barnard, still at college, had met Isabel Longstaffe at the tea-party given to introduce her to society. Both of them fell desperately in love with her, but Bateman saw quickly that she had eyes only for Edward, and, devoted to his friend, he resigned himself to the role of confidant. He took care never by a hint to disclose his own feelings. In six months the young couple were engaged. But they were very young and Isabel's father decided that they should not marry at least till Edward graduated. They had to wait a year. Then an accident happened. A great bank failed, there was a panic on the exchange, and Barnard's father found himself a ruined man. He told his wife he was penniless and shot himself.

A week later, Edward Barnard went to Isabel and asked her to release him. Her only answer was to throw her arms round his neck and burst into tears.

"How can I ask you to marry me? Your father would never let you. I haven't a cent."

"What do I care? I love you."

He told her his plans. He had to earn money at once, and George Braunschmidt, an old friend of his family, had offered to take him into his own business. He was a South Sea merchant and he had agencies in many islands of the Pacific. He had suggested that Edward should go to Tahiti for a year or two, where he could learn the details of that trade, and at the end of that time he promised the young man a position in Chicago. It was a wonderful opportunity and Isabel was once more all smiles.

Edward spent his last evening with Isabel. It was after dinner that Mr Longstaffe took him into the smoking-room, and Edward saw that his host was embarrassed.

"I guess you've heard of Arnold Jackson," he said. "Did you know he was Mrs Longstaffe's brother?"

"Yes, I knew that."

"He left the country as soon as he was able to. We understand he lives in Tahiti. My advice to you is to give him a wide berth, but if you do hear anything about him Mrs Longstaffe and I would be very glad if you'd let us know."

"Sure."

Arnold Jackson was as black a sheep as any family could suffer from. A wealthy banker, a man respected by all, he was arrested one day on a charge of fraud; he was sent to the penitentiary for seven years.

This was more than two years ago.

Edward's letters had been all that a lover's letters should be.* At first they were full of his desire to get back to Chicago and Isabel, but presently he seemed to settle down and it made Isabel very happy to observe his growing enthusiasm to introduce American methods into that forgotten corner of the world.

The second year passed and presently it began to seem a little strange that Edward did not speak of coming back. He wrote as though he were settled definitely in Tahiti. Isabel was surprised. She was not quite certain that the Edward who wrote to her now was the same Edward she had known. One afternoon, when she was driving with Bateman he said to her:

"Did Edward tell you when he was sailing?"

"No, he didn't mention it. I thought he might have said** something to you about it."

A few days later meeting Bateman again, she noticed that something troubled him.

"The fact is," he said at last, "I heard in a roundabout way that Edward was no longer working for Braunschmidt and Co. He left his employment with them nearly a year ago. He was fired."

They were silent for a while, and then he saw that Isabel was crying.

Another letter came from Edward for each of them, and still he made no mention of his return.

* ... should be ... должны быть (should is a modal verb)

** ... he might have said... ... возможно, он сказал...

It was then that Bateman had broached the scheme which had formed itself in his brain. The firm, founded by his father, in which he was now a partner, was about to establish agencies in Honolulu and Bateman proposed that himself should go instead of the manager. He could return by Tahiti, and he could see Edward.

"There is some mystery and I'm going to clear it up. That's the only way to do it."

"Oh, Bateman, how can you be so good and kind?" Isabel exclaimed. Of course she knew he loved her. It touched her. She felt very tenderly towards him.

It was from this journey that Bateman Hunter was now returned.

Meaning to take Edward by surprise, he had not cabled to announce his arrival, and when at last he landed at Tahiti he asked the youth who was leading him to the hotel:

"Can you tell me where I shall find Mr Edward Barnard?"

"Barnard?" said the youth. "I seem to know the name. You mean Mr Jackson's nephew."

Bateman was startled. It was queer that Arnold Jackson, known apparently to all and sundry, should live here under the disgraceful name in which he had been convicted.

Having found the premises of Braunschmidt and Co, Bateman sent in his card to the manager.

"Can you tell me where I shall find Mr Edward Barnard? I understand he was in this office for some time."

"He's working at Cameron's, I think," came the answer.

Bateman walked in the direction indicated and soon found himself at Cameron's. It was a trader's store, such as he had passed half a dozen¹ of on his way, and when he entered, the first person he saw, in his shirt-sleeves, measuring out a length of cotton, was Edward. It gave him a start to see him engaged in so humble an occupation.

Looking up, Edward caught sight of him, and gave a joyful cry of surprise.

"Bateman! Who ever thought of seeing you here!"

There was no self-consciousness in his manner and the embarrassment was all on Bateman's side.

"Just wait till I've wrapped this package."

With perfect assurance he ran his scissors across the stuff, folded it, made it into a parcel and handed it to the dark-skinned customer.

"Gee, I'm delighted to see you. Sit down, old man. Make yourself at home."

"We can't talk here. Come along to my hotel. I suppose you can get away?"

"Of course, I can get away. We are not so business-like as all that in Tahiti."

Edward slipped on a coat and accompanied Bateman out of the store.

"I didn't expect to find you selling three yards of rotten cotton to a greasy nigger," Bateman laughed.

"Braunschmidt fired me, you know, and I thought that would do as well as anything else."

"I guess you won't make a fortune where you are," Bateman said somewhat drily.

"I guess not. But I earn enough to keep body and soul together and I'm quite satisfied with that."

"You wouldn't have been two years ago."

"We grow wiser as we grow older," retorted Edward gaily.

They arrived at the hotel and sat on the terrace. A Chinese boy brought them cocktails. Edward was most anxious to hear all the news of Chicago. But the odd thing was that his interest seemed equally divided among a multitude of subjects. He was as eager to know how Bateman's father was as what Isabel was doing and before long Bateman found that the conversation had drifted to his own work and the buildings his father had lately erected. Bateman was determined to bring the conversation back to Isabel and was looking for the occasion when he saw Edward wave his hand cordially.

"Come and sit down," Edward said gaily.

The new-comer approached. He was a very tall thin man with curly white hair.

"This is my old friend, Bateman Hunter. I've told you about him," said Edward, his constant smile breaking on his lips.

"I'm pleased to meet you, Mr Hunter. I used to know your father."

The stranger held out his hand and took the young man's in a strong, friendly grasp. It was not till then that Edward mentioned the other's name.

"Mr Arnold Jackson."

Bateman turned white. This was the forger, the convict, this was Isabel's uncle. He did not know what to say. But Jackson said, "I can't sit down. I'm busy, Teddy. But you two boys had better come up and dine tonight."

"Of course we'll come," said Edward.

Jackson nodded and walked away before Bateman could say a word. For some time he was silent.

"I don't see how any decent man can have anything to do with him," he said. "Do you see much of him, Edward?"

"Yes, quite a lot. He's adopted me as his nephew. He has taught me everything I know."

"What has he taught you?" cried Bateman in amazement.

"How to live."

"I am not going to dine with him. Nothing would induce me to set foot in that man's house."

"Come to oblige me, Bateman. We've been friends for so many years, you won't refuse me a favour when I ask it." Edward's tone was singularly persuasive.

"If you put it like that, Edward, I'm bound to come," he smiled.

Arnold Jackson's house stood on a little hill.

They were met by a tall handsome native woman, no longer young, with whom Edward cordially shook hands.

"We're going to dine with you, Lavina."

"All right," she said. "Arnold ain't back yet."

"We'll go down and bathe."

The woman nodded and went into the house.

"Who is that?" asked Bateman.

"Oh, that's Lavina. She's Arnold's wife."

The two men made their way to a grove of coconut trees on the beach.

Soon they were splashing in the warm, shallow water. Edward was in great spirits. He laughed and shouted and sang. He might have been fifteen.

They heard a soft movement and looking round saw that Arnold Jackson was coming towards them.

"If you're ready we'll go right up," said Jackson.

They walked up to the house where a table was laid for dinner. Then Jackson led Bateman to a long low window.

"Look at that," he said.

Below them coconut trees tumbled down steeply to the lagoon. On a creek, at a little distance, were the clustered huts of a little village. Then, beyond, you saw the vast calmness of the Pacific, and twenty miles away the unimaginable beauty of the island which is called Murea.

It was all so lovely that Bateman stood abashed. Arnold Jackson stood staring in front of him, and in his eyes was a dreamy softness.

"Beauty," he murmured. "You seldom see beauty face to face. Look at it well, Mr Hunter, for what you see now you'll never see again."

Bateman had to urge himself to remember that the man who spoke was a criminal and a cruel cheat.

"Here is my daughter, Mr Hunter."

Bateman shook hands with her. She had dark, splendid eyes, her skin was brown, and her curling hair was coal-black. She was a lovely creature.

The whole party sat down to dinner.

When the dinner came to an end, the three men sat on the veranda. Arnold Jackson began to talk. His voice was rich and musical. He talked of the natives and of the old legends of the country. Bateman at first listened sullenly but presently some magic in the words possessed him and he sat entranced.

Suddenly Arnold Jackson rose.

"Well, you two boys haven't seen one another for a long time. I shall leave you to have a yarn."

For a few minutes neither of them spoke.

"When are you coming back to Chicago?" Bateman asked, suddenly. For a moment Edward did not answer. Then he turned rather lazily to look at his friend and smiled.

"I don't know. Perhaps never. I'm very happy here."

"Man alive — this is no life for you. Come away at once, before it's too late; come with me tomorrow, Edward. It was a mistake that you ever came to this place."

"You talk of this sort of life and that. How do you think a man gets the best out of life?"

"Why, by doing his duty, by hard work, by meeting all the obligations of his state and station."

Edward was silent for a minute.

"When I saw you this morning, Bateman," he said then, "I seemed to see myself as I was two years ago. The same energy. The same determination. I went about and everywhere I saw possibilities for development and enterprise. There were fortunes to be made here. It seemed to me absurd that the copra should be taken away from here in sacks and the oil extracted in America. It would be far more economical to do all that on the spot. I also invented a machine which divided the coconut and scooped out the meat at the rate of 240 an hour. I made plans to enlarge the harbour to form a syndicate and to buy land; instead of this half-French, lazy little town I saw a great American city with ten-storey buildings and street-cars and a stock-exchange and a mayor."

"But go ahead, Edward," cried Bateman springing up from the chair in excitement. "You will become the richest man between Australia and the States."

Edward chuckled softly.

"But I don't want to," he said. "It came upon me little by little. I came to like the life here with its ease and its leisure and the people with their happy smiling faces. I began to think. I'd never had time to do that before. And gradually all the life that had seemed so important to me began to seem rather trivial and vulgar. I think of Chicago now and I see a dark grey city, all stone — it is like a prison. And when I am old, what have I to look forward to? To hurry, from my home in the morning to my office and then hurry home again, and dine, and go to a theatre?"

"What do you value in life then?"

"I'm afraid you'll laugh at me. Beauty, truth and goodness. I tremble with fear when I think of the danger I have escaped. I never knew I had a soul till I found it here. If I had remained a rich man I might have lost it for good and all. I shall never come back to Chicago, Bateman."

"And what about Isabel?"

"I admire her more than any woman I've ever known. I respect her energy and her ambition. She was born to make a success of life. I am entirely unworthy of her. You must tell her so, Bateman. Tell her that I haven't made good. Tell her that I'm not only poor, but that I'm content to be poor. Tell her all you've seen tonight and all I've told you."

"Do you wish me to give her that message, Edward? Oh, I can't. It's terrible. She loves you."

Edward smiled again.

"Why don't you marry her yourself, Bateman? You've been in love with her for ages. You're perfectly suited to one another. You'll make her very happy. I resign in your favour, Bateman. You're the better man."

Edward's eyes were grave and unsmiling. Bateman did not know what to say. He was disconcerted.

"Do you mean to say that you're content to waste your life here? It seems terrible that you should be content to be no more than a salesman in a cheap store."

"Oh, I'm only doing that for the present. I have another plan in my head. Arnold Jackson has a small island about a thousand miles from here. He's planted coconut there. He's offered to give it me."

"Why should he do that?" asked Bateman.

"Because if Isabel releases me I shall marry his daughter."

"You?" Bateman was thunderstruck. "You can't marry a half-caste. You wouldn't be so crazy as that."

"She's a good girl. She's like a beautiful exotic flower that must be sheltered from the bitter winds. I want to protect her. I think Eva loves me for myself and not for what I may become. Whatever happens to me I shall never disappoint her. She suits me."

Bateman was silent.

"Don't be grieved, old friend," said Edward. "I haven't failed. I have succeeded. The years will pass insensibly and when I am an old man I shall be able to look back on a happy, simple life."

Bateman finished telling Isabel his long story. He had hidden nothing from her except what he thought would wound her.

"What are you going to do, Isabel?" he asked then.

Isabel looked down at the hand which still bore the ring Edward had given her.

"I wouldn't let*** Edward break our engagement because I thought if anything could enable him to achieve success it was the thought that I loved him. I have done all I could. It would only be weakness on my part not to recognize the facts. Poor Edward. He was a dear fellow, but there was something lacking in him."

She slipped the ring off her finger.

"You're wonderful, Isabel, you're simply wonderful."

She smiled, and, standing up, held out her hand to him.

"Isabel, you know I wanted to marry you the very first day I saw you," he cried passionately.

"Then why on earth didn't you ask me?" she replied.

And as he held her in his arms he had a vision of the works of the Hunter Motor Traction and Automobile Company growing in size and importance, and of the millions of motors they would turn out. He would wear horn spectacles. And she, with the delicious pressure of his arms about her, sighed with happiness for she thought of the exquisite house she would have, full of antique furniture, and the dinners to which only the most cultured people would come.

"Poor Edward," she sighed.

***I wouldn't let ... Я не позволяла... (would is a modal verb expressing unwillingness when used with a negation)

NOTES

1. half a dozen несколько.

The English nouns denoting a certain quantity are:
a dozen дюжина, **a score** двадцать. Very often, especially when used in the plural, they imply the idea of "a multitude," "a lot of" and correspond to the Russian множество, десятки.

I told you dozens of times.

There were scores of people in the square.

Correspondingly, **half a dozen**, **half a score** can mean "some", "a number of".

WORD COMBINATIONS

to give smb. a wide berth обходить кого-л. за версту, держаться подальше

to broach the scheme (subject, etc.) выдвигать план (поднимать вопрос и т. д.)

all and sundry каждый, всякий встречный, все

to give smb. a start испугать кого-л., шокировать

to keep body and soul together для пропитания

to have a yarn беседовать
 to meet a demand (obligation) удовлетворять требованию (исполнять обязательство)

on the spot на месте; сразу, немедленно

at the rate of со скоростью
 to make good преуспеть, добиться успеха

for good (and all) навсегда

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **ease** *n* 1. свобода, непринужденность; **at (one's) ease** свободно, непринужденно: *Bill is quite at ease in any company.* 2. легкость; **with ease** с легкостью: *He learns with ease.* Он учится без труда.

ease *v* 1. облегчать (боль, ношу): *The doctor did his best to ease the pain in the man's chest.* 2. ослаблять, уменьшать (напряжение и т. д.): *These measures were taken to ease international tension.*

easy *a* легкий, нетрудный; непринужденный, свободный; *adv* легко, спокойно: *Take it easy. Не волнуйтесь. Не принимайте это близко к сердцу.*

easily *adv* легко; свободно, без труда. Ant. **uneasily**

2. **resign** *v* отказываться (от должности, права); уходить в отставку: *He resigned and another president was elected.* **to resign oneself** подчиняться, мириться с чем-л.: *They had to resign themselves to the new demands.*

resignation *n* 1. отказ от (или уход с) должности; отставка: *The resignation of the president was quite unexpected.*

2. заявление об отставке; **to send in one's resignation** подать прошение об отставке

resigned *a* покорный, безропотный; смирившийся

resignedly *adv* безропотно: *She sighed resignedly.*

3. **engage** *v* 1. нанимать; заказывать заранее (*комнату, место*): *She engaged two servants to assist at the party. The table is engaged.* 2. занимать (*время*): *The secretary said the manager's time was fully engaged and we had to make an arrangement for another day.* 3. **to be engaged in smth.** заниматься чем-л., быть занятым: *He was engaged in conversation with engineers.* 4. вводить войска (вступать) в бой: *We realized that the enemy was not ready yet to engage.* 5. **to be engaged in hostilities** быть вовлеченным в военные действия
- engaged** *a* 1. занятый, поглощенный: *Don't let them in. I'm engaged.* 2. помолвленный: *I can't marry her. I'm already engaged.*
- engagement** *n* 1. дело, занятие: *He has got some new engagement.* 2. свидание. встреча; приглашение: *I have two engagements for the theatre next week.* 3. помолвка: *Their engagement was announced at the party.* 4. бой, стычка: *The troops were ready for the engagement.* Ant. **disengagement** выход из боя
4. **exchange** *n* 1. обмен, мена: *An exchange of views took place between two ministers last week. Exchanges of delegations are welcome.* 2. **in exchange for** в обмен на: *He took English lessons in exchange for Russian lessons.* 3. размен; **rate (course) of exchange** валютный курс; **free exchange** свободная валюта. 4. биржа; **corn exchange** хлебная биржа; **labour exchange** биржа труда; **stock exchange** фондовая биржа. 5. центральная телефонная станция; коммутатор
- exchange** *v* 1. обменивать(ся): *They exchanged warm greetings.* 2. меняться; **to exchange**

seats меняться местами; **to exchange words with smb.** обменяться с кем-л. несколькими словами

exchangeable *a* годный для обмена

5. **employment** *n* 1. служба; занятие, работа: *Employment is a major problem for workers in capitalist countries.* 2. **Проблема трудоустройства в капиталистических странах является главной для рабочих.** 3. **out of employment** без работы; 4. **full employment** полная занятость: *Capitalist production can't provide full employment for workers.* 5. **employment bureau** бюро найма. Ant. **unemployment** безработица. 6. применение, использование: *This system requires employment of new methods.*

employ *v* 1. держать на службе; предоставлять работу; нанимать: *This construction site will employ hundreds of men.* 2. употреблять, применять, использовать: *How do they employ the new technology at that plant?*

employee *n* служащий, работающий по найму: *The company has 300 employees.*

employer *n* предприниматель, наниматель, работодатель: *The employer rejected the higher wages demand.*

6. **assurance** *n* 1. уверение, заверение, гарантия: *We had Ann's assurance that she would let us know if she received a letter.* 2. уверенность, убежденность: *Nothing could shake our assurance that our people would win the war.*

assure *v* 1. уверять, заверять (кого-л.): *We assured him that there was no immediate danger.* 2. гарантировать, обеспечивать: *Hard work assures success.*

assured *a* 1. уверенный; 2. гарантированный, обеспеченный: *Now everybody knows that success is assured.*

7. **determine** *v* 1. определять, устанавливать: *How is the speed of sound determined?* 2. решать(ся): *I determined to go there by all means. He was determined to have nothing to do with her.*

determined *a* 1. принявший решение, решившийся. 2. решительный, полный решимости: *determined character*

determination *n* 1. определение, установление. 2. решимость; решительность: *They were full of determination to devote their lives to the liberation of their land.*

8. **oblige** *v* 1. обязывать; связывать обязательством. 2. делать одолжение, угождать: *Can you oblige me by helping lift the box?* Помогите мне, пожалуйста, поднять ящик. *to be obliged* быть благодарным, обязанным: *I am much obliged to you.* Очень вам благодарен.

obliging *a* обязательный, услужливый, любезный: *She is such an obliging person.*

obligingly *adv* любезно, услужливо, вежливо

obligation *n* 1. обязательство; 2. обязанность, долг: *One does not only have rights; one has also duties and obligations.*

obligatory *a* обязательный, обязывающий: *Secondary education is obligatory in our country.*

9. **favour** *n* 1. благосклонность, расположение, одобрение; *to win smb.'s favour* снискать чье-л. расположение, угождать кому-л.; *to look with favour on smb.* относиться доброжелательно к кому-л.; *to stand high in smb.'s favour* быть в милости у кого-л. 2. одолжение, любезность; *to do*

smth. as a favour сделать что-л. в виде одолжения; *to do smb. a favour* сделать кому-л. одолжение: *Do me a favour, pass him this letter.* 3. польза, интерес, помощь; *to be in favour of smth.* стоять за что-л., быть сторонником чего-л.; в пользу кого-л., чего-л.: *They are in favour of your proposal.*

favour *v* 1. благоволить, быть благосклонным; оказывать внимание, любезность: *Will you favour us with a few words?* Не соблаговолите ли вы сказать нам несколько слов?

2. благоприятствовать; помогать, поддерживать: *The weather favoured our trip.* 3. покровительствовать; быть пристрастным, оказывать предпочтение

favourable *a* благоприятный, подходящий, удобный; благосклонный, расположенный: *favourable conditions; The report is quite favourable as far as you are concerned.* Ant. *unfavourable*

favourite *n* 1. любимец, фаворит. 2. любимая вещь: *That watch was a favourite of Pickwick's.* 3. фаворит, кандидат, имеющий наибольший шанс на успех (на выборах, в соревновании)

favourite *a* любимый, излюбленный: *Who is your favourite writer?*

10. **lack** *v* испытывать недостаток, нуждаться; не иметь; не хватать, не доставать: *I permanently lack time. He lacked the courage to say it.*

lack *n* недостаток, нужда; отсутствие (чего-л.): *lack of time (practice, manners); for lack of* из-за отсутствия (недостатка): *He was forgetting the language for lack of practice.*

EXERCISES

1. a) Give Russian equivalents for the following.

1. At dinner, at which beside himself and Isabel no one was present but her father and mother, he watched her guide the conversation into the channels of an urbane small talk. 2. The dining-room was a fitting frame for her fragile beauty, for Isabel had caused the house, a replica of a palace in Venice, to be furnished by an English expert in the style of Louis XV. 3. A great bank failed, there was a panic on the exchange, and Barnard's father found himself a ruined man. 4. It was a wonderful opportunity and Isabel was once more all smiles. 5. With perfect assurance he ran his scissors across the stuff, folded it, made it into a parcel and handed it to the dark-skinned customer. 6. Braunschmidt fired me, you know, and I thought that would do as well as anything else. 7. A man gets the best out of life by doing his duty, by hard work, by meeting all the obligations of his state and station.

b) Find English equivalents for the following in the text.

1. Бейтман заговорил снова лишь после долгого молчания, когда каждый из них был полон мыслями о своем. 2. Арнольд Джексон был такой «паршивой овцой», какую редко можно встретить в какой-нибудь семье. 3. Рассчитывая застать Эдварда врасплох, он не сообщил телеграммой о своем приезде. 4. Было странно, что Арнольд Джексон, известный, как видно, всякому встречному, жил здесь под своим позорным именем приговоренного к каторге. 5. Мне известно, что он работал некоторое время в этой конторе. 6. Он держался без всякой застенчивости; смущен был только Бейтман. 7. Ты часто видишься с ним, Эдвард? 8. Здесь можно нажить гору денег. 9. Если бы я остался богатым человеком, я бы, может быть, навсегда погубил свою душу.

2. a) Paraphrase the italicized parts of the following sentences. Use words and word combinations from the following list:

assurance, to determine, determination, to do a favour, favourable, in favour of, to be engaged, an engagement, to exchange, lack, an obligation, obligatory, to oblige, to persuade, persuasive, to resign, a resignation

1. You will *be so kind as* to sort these books and arrange them on the shelves. 2. Can anyone tell me if attendance of such lectures is *compulsory* even for those who have passed exams in

this subject? 3. Far from opposing your plan they spoke wholeheartedly *in support of* it. 4. Conditions at that time, as is known, were *suitable* for introducing new methods and technique into production. 5. He could never even for a moment forget his *duty* to the people who had saved his life and helped him return to his country. 6. Nobody could *convince* him that writing such books was sheer waste of effort and time. 7. Hyde had lost his last case in court and *abandoned the firm* at once. 8. With Ellen's care the house gained a charm that made up for its *want* of design.

b) *Fill in the blanks with words and word combinations from the above list.*

1. Old ties and mutual ... held these two friends together through all the stormy years of their lives. 2. His arguments were so ... that I did not even attempt to argue. 3. After a series of flops in the operations of the firm Webb's ... became a matter of time. 4. They ... quick glances. 5. Nothing could shake their ... that they were on the way to a great discovery. 6. I have already two important ... for tomorrow. So I'll hardly have time to spare. 7. "You'd better come a little later. The manager He is in session with the engineers," said the secretary. 8. Once he made up his mind, nothing could shatter his 9. I'll not be able to come to you due to previous

c) *Translate into English.*

1. Вы не *окажете* мне *любезность*? Мне нужно сосчитать эти книги и я *буду* вам очень *обязана*, если вы мне поможете. 2. Такие вопросы всегда лучше разрешать *на месте*. 3. Ему *нехватало* смелости сознаться, что он неправ. 4. Говорят, что он после этого *подал в отставку* и навсегда поселился в деревне. 5. И что ты так волнуешься из-за пустяка? *Относись к этому спокойно*. 6. Он *выскользнул* из комнаты незамеченным. 7. Ей ничего не оставалось делать, как *покориться* судьбе. 8. *Из-за недостатка* времени докладчик был вынужден сократить свой доклад.

3. a) *Form verbs by adding the prefix en- to the following nouns and adjectives.*

danger, force, slave, title, courage, large, trench, rich, able, sure

b) *Add the suffix -al to the following adjectives and state the difference in the meaning.*

economic, electric, optic, historic, classic

4. *Choose the right word for the Russian хозяин, хозяйка out of the following.*

host (hostess), landlord (landlady), master (mistress)

1. "You'd better be quick and do the rooms, (хозяин, хозяйка) will be back soon," the cook said to the young maid. 2. "Mrs Danvers, you are a month behind with your rent, have you not forgotten that?" (хозяин, хозяйка) said to his (her) lodger. 3. "Don't you know, dear, at dinner (хозяин) sits at the head of the table and (хозяйка) at the other end, just opposite him, with the guests sitting all around the table?" Mrs Crowan was explaining to her daughter. 4. "Whose dog is that over there? Where is its (хозяин)?" the policeman asked.

5. *Give English equivalents for the following word combinations and use them in sentences or situations of your own.*

наносить удар, избегать кого-л. (что-л.), испугать кого-л., чувствовать себя как дома, пока не поздно, удовлетворять желание (требование), быть в замешательстве

6. *State the meaning of must, to have to, to be to in the following sentences.*

1. Stephen's progress is rather slow, he must study hard. 2. "You must have been very anxious to see Gwynne," said the barrister. 3. It was I now who had to attend wearisome press-conferences. 4. "I wish this wall were a little lower," said Underhill. "But it has to be tried." 5. Johnny announced that I was to be broiled at the stake at the rising of the sun. 6. Edward seldom writes to me now, he must be working a lot. 7. "If I am to have a doctor, let me at least have someone in whom I have confidence," said Holmes. 8. "I will bring him in a cab, if I have to carry him down," said Watson. 9. Christine must have been reading a lot these two years. 10. These facts are not to be ignored. 11. Red Chief told Bill that he was to be his horse and was to obey his orders. 12. Irene must be at home by now. We saw her leaving the Institute an hour ago. 13. Emma must stay at home, she can't go with us; there is no one else to look after the child. 14. According to the plan large sums are to be invested in this industry. 15. It is not to be forgotten that the boy was left to provide for himself. 16. Ned's health has improved, he must have followed your advice and given up smoking. 17. Holes made by bullets were to be found in the walls of many houses. 18. "It was to be expected," the old woman sighed.

7. Use the appropriate form of the infinitive in brackets.

1. Look! All the roofs are white. It must (to snow) all night.
2. Something must (to detain) the expedition in the mountains; they were (to return) by the end of August. 3. Lindsay said that Madge was (to give up) Rex Strang if she wanted to see him cured. 4. It must (to cause) you a lot of trouble to get your letter delivered in time. 5. The ship was (to arrive) at three and now it is five o'clock and there is no ship. 6. Judging by the notice on the door they must (to discuss) something important there.

8. Fill in the blanks with *must*, *to have to*, *to be to*. Use the correct form of the infinitives in brackets.

1. As they had arranged over the telephone Bateman ... (to dine) with Isabel. "You ... (to be) full of news," said Isabel. 2. Edward ... (to go) to Tahiti. In two years he ... (to get) a position in Chicago. 3. Two years had passed and by that time according to the arrangement Edward ... (to come) back. However he never wrote of returning. "He ... (to be) settled definitely at Tahiti," thought Isabel. 4. Another letter came from Edward and still no mention of his return ... (to find) in it. 5. Dr Lindsay didn't know who ... (to be) his patient. 6. Dr Lindsay ... (to use) all his skill as a physician to make Rex well. 7. "You ... (not to resign) if you don't want to. Nobody forces you," he said to the clerk. 8. "What ... (to become) of us if the boy stays with us?" Bill said. "We ... (to get rid) of him at all costs."

9. a) Translate the following sentences into Russian paying attention to the italicized words.

1. You must have *misunderstood* her. I'm sure she did not mean to hurt you. 2. They must have *failed* to cut down their expenses. That's why they ran into debt again. 3. Our telegram must *never* have reached them or else they would have come to meet us. 4. *No one* must have seen the messenger deliver the letter. 5. She must have had *no* chance to warn me about the meeting. Such a pity I couldn't attend it. 6. They must have been quite *unaware* of what they were doing.

b) Make the following sentences opposite in meaning.

1. He must have had a good chance of winning the contest.
2. She must have been aware of the slip she made in writing.
3. Sam and Bill must have been very experienced in kidnapping.

4. Pyle must have given the visiting Congressmen correct information as to the situation in South Viet-Nam. 5. Everybody must have noticed he was embarrassed. 6. He must have understood the rule, that's why there are not any mistakes in his exercises. 7. She must have been conscious of having offended them, so she felt confused.

c) *Paraphrase the following sentences using the verb must.*

1. "I'm sure the judge has already acquainted himself with your claim," he said. 2. Most likely Sam and Bill didn't realize who they were kidnapping. 3. Something had obviously upset her. We had never seen her lose her temper before. 4. Surely he could not guess the real reason for their being so inattentive. 5. She has evidently been waiting for us for a long time.

10. *Translate into English. Use must, to be to, to have to and active vocabulary.*

1. Бейтман, должно быть, быстро заметил, что для Изабел существует только Эдвард и, как ни больно ему было, ему пришлось покориться судьбе и отказаться от своих надежд. 2. Эдвард не мог представить себе, что его отцу суждено было вскоре разориться, а ему самому столкнуться с проблемой устройства на работу. 3. Следуя предостережениям отца Изабел, Эдвард должен был избегать Джексона, поскольку последний был «паршивой овцой» в их семье. 4. По всей вероятности, Изабел не понимала решимости Эдварда навсегда поселиться на Таити. 5. Хотя Бейтман считал Джексона мошенником, он вынужден был пойти к нему на обед, так как не мог устоять перед уговорами Эдварда. 6. Сначала Эдвард, должно быть, действительно был полон решимости и энтузиазма ввести американские методы предпринимательства в этот забытый всеми уголок земли. 7. К этому времени Эдвард уже должен был скопить состояние. Тем не менее, в его письмах по-прежнему не было никакого упоминания о сроках возвращения. 8. «Вам придется передать Изабел, что я отказываюсь от своих прав в вашу пользу, Бейтман», — уговаривал его Эдвард. 9. При виде Эдварда, отмерявшего какой-то материал за прилавком, Бейтман был поражен и подумал: «Неужели ему приходится заниматься здесь таким жалким делом?» 10. Бейтман, наверное, возвращался в Чикаго не со спокойной совестью: с одной стороны, он был далеко не уверен, что сделал все, что мог, чтобы заставить Эдварда вернуться; с другой стороны, ему предстояло нанести Изабел жестокий удар. 11. Мы были вынуждены прекратить поставку

товаров, так как фирма не соблюдала некоторые условия соглашения. 12. Фаулер, должно быть, не осознал сразу всей важности сообщения Хенга о диолактоне. 13. Наверное, Бейтман так и не сказал Изабел, что Эдвард собирается жениться на дочери Джексона.

11. a) *Translate into Russian. Memorize the word combinations with the names of colours. Use them in sentences of your own.*

black

in black and white

Stop arguing. We'd better read the paper. Here it is put in black and white.

blue

a bolt from the blue

The news came like a bolt from the blue.

once in a blue moon

We were surprised at Jack turning up in our parts. We saw him here once in a blue moon.

be in the blues

Daisy is not dancing and hardly speaking to anyone. She must be in the blues again.

green

green with envy (jealousy)

He paid Ann compliments and Lucy was green with jealousy.

green (or green horn)

My, but you are green! Look, I'll show you how to do it.

to give a (the) green light (to) (Am.)

The speaker called to give a green light to the new technology.

red

to see red

That was an impudent lie and at once Martin saw red.

red tape

"It's high time we did away with red tape!" a voice called.

white

white collar (Am.)

Both the workers and the white collars of the town went on strike.

lily-white (*Am.*)

All those committees were lily-white bodies, Negroes had no entry into them.

to show the white feather

You'd better not rely on him. When it comes to business he'll show the white feather.

yellow

the yellow press (journalism, newspapers)

Again the yellow press raised a howl about the march being inspired by communists.

b) *Translate into English.*

1. Сообщают, что все *служащие* одной чикагской фирмы объявили забастовку, требуя повышения заработной платы. 2. Здесь *черным по белому* написано, что вход разрешен только по пропускам. 3. Преступное поведение этих правительств на Мюнхенской конференции 1938 года *развязало руки* нацистам, и они оккупировали Чехословакию. 4. И тут она сказала нам, что они поженились. Это было *как гром среди ясного неба*. 5. Они дразнили его до тех пор, пока он не *пришел в ярость* и не набросился на них с кулаками. 6. Никого *пельзя хвалить* в ее присутствии. Она прямо *зеленеет от зависти*. 7. Их еще надо учить. Они *новички* в этом деле. 8. Не пойду я на вечер, *у меня плохое настроение*. 9. *В кои-то веки* ты приходишь к нам и всегда спешишь уйти. 10. Она презирала мужа за то, что он *струсил* тогда и не поставил своей подписи под воззванием.

12. *Answer the following questions.*

1. What was Bateman Hunter's state of mind while he was on his way back from Tahiti to Chicago?
2. Under what circumstances had Edward Barnard and Bateman met Isabel?
3. What made Edward leave for Tahiti?
4. Why did Bateman make up his mind to go to Tahiti two years later?
5. Why did Bateman feel embarrassed when he found Edward in Tahiti?

6. How did it come about that Edward made the acquaintance of Arnold Jackson?
7. What was the impression Arnold Jackson made on Bateman?
8. What ideas occurred to Edward at the beginning of his stay in Tahiti and why did he finally give them up and decide to settle in Tahiti?
9. Why did Edward suppose that Bateman would make a better husband for Isabel than himself?
13. *Prove that the following statements are wrong; use one of the phrases: "Just the opposite", "On the contrary," "It is not true", etc.*

1. When the train was nearing Chicago Bateman's conscience was at ease; he was certain that he had done all that was possible and a happy smile lit up his face when he thought of Edward Barnard.
2. Bateman's heart fell when he saw the long street of grey houses in Chicago.
3. Two years before, when both friends had fallen desperately in love with Isabel, Bateman saw quickly that Isabel had eyes only for Edward and he determined to win Isabel's heart by all means.
4. When Edward's father found himself a ruined man Isabel asked Edward to release her.
5. The Longstaffes asked Edward to make friends with their relative Arnold Jackson whom they were very proud of.
6. By the time Bateman came to Tahiti Edward had become the manager of Braunschmidt's agency there.
7. Edward followed Mr Longstaffe's advice and always gave Arnold Jackson a wide berth.
8. Edward was anxious to return to Chicago as soon as possible and to marry Isabel, who suited him perfectly.

14. *Use the words and word combinations in brackets to compare:*

a) Bateman Hunter (a partner in a firm, to succeed, to be full of enthusiasm, to get the best out of life, to do one's duty, to meet the obligation of one's state and station)

and

Edward Barnard (a salesman in a cheap store, to fail, a humble occupation, to escape a danger, to value something in life, truth, beauty, goodness, to be content, to be entirely unworthy)

b) Isabel Longstaffe (fragile beauty, to be a fitting frame for something, to feel at ease, to guide the conversation, to be ambitious, the best blood in Chicago, an exquisite house, antique furniture, to be born to make a success of life)

and

Eva Jackson (lovely creature, splendid eyes, curling hair, coal-black, an exotic flower, to shelter from bitter winds, smiling, to protect, to love a man for himself and not for what he may become)

c) Life in Chicago (long streets of grey houses, multi-storey buildings, a stock exchange, a mayor, to be like a prison, trivial and vulgar, a dark grey city, all stone, to hurry from home to the office)

and

life in Tahiti (a lazy little town, life with its ease and leisure, happy smiling faces, unimaginable beauty, a grove of coconut trees, the vast calmness of the Pacific)

15. *Retell the text according to the following plan.*

- a) Bateman Hunter and Edward Barnard make the acquaintance of Isabel.
- b) Edward's father becomes ruined.
- c) Edward leaves for Tahiti.
- d) Edward's letters to Isabel.
- e) Bateman meets Edward in Tahiti.
- f) Dinner at Jackson's.
- g) Edward's life in Tahiti. The change in his views on life; his plans for the future.
- h) Bateman Hunter returns to Chicago.

16. *Retell the fable.*

The Fox and the Crow

(after *James Thurber*)

A fox, attracted by the scent of something, followed his nose to a tree in which sat a crow with a piece of cheese in his beak.

"Oh, cheese," said the fox scornfully. "That's for mice..."

The crow removed the cheese with his talons and said,

“You always hate the thing you cannot have, as, for instance, grapes.”

“Grapes are for birds,” said the fox haughtily. “I am an epicure, a gourmet.”

The embarrassed crow, ashamed to be seen eating mouse food by a great specialist in the art of dining, hastily dropped the cheese. The fox caught and swallowed it, politely said: “Merci” and trotted away.

17. *Render in English.*

Живописец, которого не было

Некоторое время назад в Нью-Йорке открылась выставка произведений художника-кубиста Юсепа Торреса Кампаланса. На выставке были представлены картины, рисунки и эскизы, выполненные художником в период с 1906 по 1914 год.

Одновременно нью-йоркское издательство (a publishing house) Даблдей выпустило книгу о Кампалансе с репродукциями его полотен. Автор — испанский искусствовед (an art critic) Макс Ауб.

На одной из фотографий в книге Ауба художник изображен рядом со своим большим другом Пабло Пикассо. Там же можно было увидеть выполненные Кампалансом зарисовки многих деятелей искусства, с которыми Пикассо был так или иначе связан. Биография Кампаланса повествует о том, как молодой художник приехал в Барселону, чтобы познакомиться с творческой жизнью большого города, а в самом конце прошлого века перебрался в Париж, где был одним из основателей кубизма. Накануне первой мировой войны он оставил Париж, выехав в неизвестном направлении.

Прошло сорок лет, и вот в одной из южных провинций Мексики Макс Ауб нашел забытого всем миром старика, живущего в окружении детей и внуков — Торреса Кампаланса.

Эта любопытная история могла бы еще раз свидетельствовать о том, как трагична судьба многих талантов в капиталистическом мире, если бы в повести о жизни художника было хоть слово правды. Кампаланс и его творчество — плод фантазии Макса Ауба. Все картины Кампаланса сделаны Аубом.

Фотография, на которой художник снят рядом с Пикассо — подделка Ауба. История его жизни выдумана Аубом.

Какова же цель этой фальсификации? И выставка, и каталоги, и многочисленные критические статьи — все это понадобилось Аубу, чтобы жестоко посмеяться над невежеством критиков в различных областях искусства, которые имеют право создавать и ниспровергать таланты в современной Америке и капиталистической Европе.

Lesson 9

GRAMMAR: MODAL VERBS *NEED*, *SHOULD*, *OUGHT*

A. need

(in interrogative and negative sentences only)

1. *Need I tell you about it?* Нужно ли мне рассказывать вам об этом?
Yes, you must. No, you needn't. (You may if you like, but it is not necessary.) No, you mustn't. (You are not allowed.)
Do I need to tell you about it every time? Неужели мне нужно говорить тебе об этом каждый раз?
I am glad I *needn't say* it all over again. Я рад, что мне не нужно повторять все это опять.
He *didn't need to return* the book on Monday. Ему не было необходимости возвращать книгу в понедельник.
2. You *needn't have brought* me the dictionary. I have done without it. Вам не нужно было приносить мне словарь. Я обошелся без него.

B. should

1. He *shouldn't go* there alone: he is too young for long journeys. Ему не следует (не следовало бы, не нужно было бы) ехать туда одному. Он слишком молод для длительных путешествий.
They *should have followed* his advice. Now they regret not to have done so. Им следовало (следовало бы, нужно было, они должны были) последовать его совету. Теперь они сожалеют, что не сделали этого.
(advice, personal opinion)
2. Stop talking, will you? You *should be* more attentive at the lesson! Перестаньте разговаривать! Вам следует (следовало бы) быть более внимательным на занятиях.
Where is your translation? You *should have done* it long ago. Где же ваш перевод? Вы должны были (надо было, следовало) уже давно сделать его.
You *shouldn't have spoken* to her in such a tone. You have

hurt her, I am sure. Вы не должны были (вам не следовало) говорить с ней таким тоном. Я уверен, вы обидели ее.

(reproach)

C. ought (to)

1. The young *ought to respect* old age. Молодым следует (следовало бы, молодые должны) уважать старость.

"You *ought to read* the book if you want to be well prepared for the exam," the teacher said. «Вам нужно (нужно было бы) прочитать эту книгу, если вы хотите хорошо подготовиться к экзамену»,— сказал преподаватель.

"You *ought not to show* him that you notice his poor French, it may hurt him," she said. «Вам не следует показывать ему, что вы замечаете, что он плохо говорит по-французски; это может обидеть его»,— сказала она.

(moral obligation, necessity, advice)

2. You *ought to have behaved* less formally at the party. It made some of your guests feel ill at ease. Вам не надо было (не следовало) держаться так официально на вечере. Это заставило некоторых из ваших гостей чувствовать себя неловко.

(reproach)

ACME

(by J. Galsworthy)

John Galsworthy (1867—1933) was born in the family of a prominent London lawyer. He graduated from Oxford University where he studied law. After two years' travelling abroad he took up practice as a lawyer. His knowledge of law turned out to be of great use to him in his later career as a writer.

Galsworthy's most famous novels are "The Forsyte Saga" and "A Modern Comedy", containing a masterful description of bourgeois life. He also wrote short stories and plays, some of which have been successfully staged in Soviet theatres.

In 1932 Galsworthy was awarded the Nobel Prize.

In these days no man of genius need starve. The following story of my friend Bruce may be taken as proof of this assertion. Nearly sixty when I first knew him, he must have written already some fifteen books, which had earned him the reputation of "a genius" with the few who knew. He used to live in York Street,¹ Adelphi, where he had two rooms up the very shaky

staircase of a house chiefly remarkable for the fact that its front door seemed always open. I suppose there never was a writer more indifferent to what people thought of him. He profoundly neglected the Press — he seemed never to read criticism. He was a tall, thin man, with a face rather like Mark Twain's, black eyebrows which bristled and shot up, a bitten drooping grey moustache, and grey hair; but his eyes were like owl's eyes, piercing, melancholy, dark brown. He was a bachelor, who seemed to avoid women.

The year of which I write had been to my friend Bruce the devil, monetarily speaking. With his passion for writing that for which his Age had no taste — what could he expect? His last book had been a complete frost. He had undergone, too, an operation which had cost him much money and left him very weak. When I went to see him that October, I found him stretched out on two chairs, smoking. He had a writing-pad on his knee, and sheets of paper scattered all round. I had not seen him for a year and more, but he looked up at me as if I'd been in yesterday.

"Hallo!" he said. "I went into a thing they call a cinema last night. Have you ever been?"

"Ever been? Do you know how long the cinema has been going? Since about 1900."

"Well! What a *thing*! I'm writing a skit on it."

"How — a skit?"

"Parody — wildest yarn you ever read. My heroine," he said, "is an Octoroon. She's more virtuous than words can say. She has a perfect devil of a brother, with whom she was brought up, and who wants to trade her off to a millionaire. Altogether there are four deep dark secrets in my yarn. It's a corker."

"What a waste of your time!" I said.

"My time!" he answered fiercely. "What's the use of my time? Nobody buys my books. Last night — at that place — they had a race between a train and a motor-car, a flying machine and a horse."

"May I look at your skit," I said, "when you've finished it?"

"It is finished. Wrote it straight off. D'you think I could stop and then go on again with a thing like that?" He gathered the sheets and held them out to me. "Take the thing — it's amused me to do it. The heroine's secret is that she isn't an Octoroon at all; she's purest Creole blood of the South; and her brother isn't her brother; and the bad millionaire isn't a millionaire, and her penniless lover is. It's rich, I tell you."

"Thanks," I said dryly, and took the sheets.

I went away concerned about my friend, his illness, and especially his poverty, for I saw no end to it.

After dinner that evening, I began languidly to read his skit. I had not read two pages of the thirty-five before I started up, sat down again, and feverishly read on. Skit! By George! He had written a perfect scenario. It was a little gold-mine if properly handled. Any good film company, I felt convinced, would catch at it. Yes! But how to handle it? Bruce was such an unaccountable creature. Imagine his having only just realized the cinema! If I told him his skit was a serious film, he would say: "Good God!" and put it in the fire, priceless though it was. And yet, how could I market it without *carte blanche*? I was deathly keen on getting some money for him; and this thing, properly worked, might almost make him independent. He was prickly proud, too — very difficult about money. Could I work it without telling him anything? I knew he never looked at a newspaper. But should I be justified in taking advantage of that — in getting the thing accepted and produced without his knowing? I revolved the question for hours, and went to see him again next day.

He was reading.

I interrupted him.

"Do you want that skit back, or can I keep it?"

"Skit? What skit?"

"The thing you gave me yesterday."

"That! Light your fire with it."

"Yes," I said; "I'll light a fire with it. I see you're busy."

"Oh, no! I'm not," he said. "I've nothing to do. What's the good of my writing? I earn less with every book that comes out. I'm dying of poverty."

"That's because you won't consider the public."

"How can I consider the public when I don't know what they want?"

"Because you won't take the trouble to find out. If I suggested a way to you of pleasing the public and making money, you'd kick me out of the room."

And the words: "For instance, I've got a little gold-mine of yours in my pocket," were on the tip of my tongue, but I choked them back.

I took the gold-mine away and promptly rough-shaped it for the film. It was perfectly easy, without any alteration of the story. Then I was faced with the temptation to put his name to it. The point was this: If I took it to a film company as an

authorless scenario, I should only get authorless terms; whereas, if I put his name to it, I could double the terms at least. At last I hit on a middle course.

I took it to an excellent company next day, with a covering note saying: "The author, a man of recognised literary genius, for certain reasons prefers to remain unknown." For a week I played them over terms. Twice I delivered an ultimatum — twice they surrendered: they knew too well what they had got. I could have made a contract with £ 2,000 down which would have brought at least another £ 2,000 before the contract term closed; but I compounded for one that gave me £ 3,000 down, as likely to lead to less difficulty with Bruce. The terms were not a whit too good for what was really the "acme" of scenarios.

If I could have been quite open, I could certainly have done better. Finally, however, I signed the contract, delivered the manuscript, and received a cheque for the price. I was elated, and at the same time knew that my troubles were just beginning. With Bruce's feeling about the film, how the deuce should I get him to take the money? Could I go to his publishers, and conspire with them to trickle it out to him gradually, as if it came from his books? That meant letting them into the secret; and the secret was bound to come out. Could I get a lawyer to spring an inheritance on him? That would mean no end of lying and elaboration, even if a lawyer would consent. Should I send him the money in Bank of England notes, with the words: "From a lifelong admirer of your genius?" I was afraid he would suspect a trick, or stolen notes, and go to the police to trace them.

The question worried me terribly. It was the sort of thing that, if talked over, would certainly leak out. It was not desirable, however, to delay cashing a big cheque like that. Besides, they had started on the production. It happened to be a slack time, so that they were rushing it on. And in the meantime there was Bruce — starved of everything he wanted, unable to get away for want of money, depressed about his health and his future. And yet so completely had he always seemed to me different, strange, superior to this civilization of ours, that the idea of going to him and saying simply: "This is yours, for the film you wrote," scared me.

At last I hit on a way, that by introducing my own interest might break my fall. I cashed the cheque, lodged the money at my bank, drew my own cheque on it for the full amount, and armed with that and the contract, went to see him.

He was lying on two chairs smoking and playing with a stray cat which had attached itself to him. He seemed rather less prickly than usual, and after beating about the bushes of his health and other matters, I began:

"I've got a confession to make, Bruce."

"Confession!" he said. "What confession?"

"You remember that skit on the film you wrote, and gave me about six weeks ago?"

"No."

"Yes, you do — about an Octoroon."

He chuckled. "Oh! Ah! That!"

I took a deep breath, and went on:

"Well, I sold it; and the price of course belongs to you."

"What? Who'd print a thing like that?"

"It isn't printed. It's been made into a film — super-film, they call it."

His hand came to a pause on the cat's back, and he glared at me. I hastened on:

"I ought to have told you what I was doing, but you're so prickly, and you've got such confounded superior notions. The fact is, it made a marvellous scenario. Here's the contract, and here's a cheque on my bank for the price — £3,000. If you like to treat me as your agent, you owe me £300. I don't expect it, but I'm not proud like you, and I shan't sneeze."

"Good God!" he said.

"Yes, I know. But it's all nonsense, Bruce. You can carry scruples to altogether too great length. The film's a quite justified expression of modern civilization — a natural outcome of the Age. It gives amusement; it affords pleasure. It may be vulgar, it may be cheap, but we *are* vulgar, and we *are* cheap, and it's no use pretending we're not — not you, of course, Bruce, but people at large."

The glare in his eyes was almost paralysing me, but I managed to stammer on:

"You live out of the world — you don't realise what humdrum people want; something to balance the banality of their lives. They want blood, thrill, sensation of all sorts. You didn't mean to give it them, but you've done them a benefit, whether you wish to or not, and the money's yours and you've got to take it."

The cat suddenly jumped down. I waited for the storm to burst.

"I know," I dashed on, "that you hate and despise the film —"

Suddenly his voice boomed out: "Bosh! What are you talking about? Film! I go there every other night."

It was my turn to say: "Good God!" And ramming contract and cheque into his empty hand, I bolted, closely followed by the cat.

NOTES

1. He **used to live** in York Street.

Used to describes an action which continued habitually or for some time in the past but which does not take place now.

He **used to smoke** (now he does not smoke).

She **used to buy** her dresses in Oxford Street (now she buys them somewhere else).

WORD COMBINATIONS

to undergo an operation подвергнуться операции

to be on the tip of one's tongue вертеться на языке

to cash a cheque получить деньги по чеку

to lodge the money at the bank класть деньги в банк

to draw a cheque on брать деньги из банка

to beat about the bush ходить вокруг да около

to take a breath вздохнуть; перевести дыхание

to carry scruples to great length быть слишком щепетильным

people at large широкие слои (читателей, зрителей и т. д.)

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **assertion** *n* утверждение: *a mere assertion* голословное утверждение

assert *v* утверждать; заявлять; доказывать: *His friends asserted that he was innocent.*

2. **neglect** *v* пренебрегать (чем-л.), не заботиться (о чем-л.), не обращать внимания (на кого-л., что-л.): *to neglect one's studies (one's children)*

neglect *n* пренебрежение; небрежность; запущенность, заброшенность: *He lost his position owing to neglect of duty. This room was in a state of neglect.*

neglectful *a* невнимательный (о ком-л., чему-л.), небрежный, беззаботный: *He was never neglectful of his duties.*

3. **amuse** *v* развлекать, забав-

лять: *His jokes always amused us.*

amusement *n* развлечение, увеселение, забава, веселье: *There are plenty of amusements in a big city — concerts, film shows, theatres, etc.*

amusing *a* забавный, смешной, занимательный, занятный

4. **convince** *v* убеждать, уверять: *I couldn't convince her of her mistake.*

convinced *a* убежденный (о ком-л.): *He was quite convinced of his method being the simplest of all.*

convincing *a* убедительный: *It's a convincing proof of his being innocent.*

convincingly *adv* убедительно: *He spoke so convincingly that we couldn't help believing him.*

5. **consider** *v* 1. рассматривать, обсуждать: *This question will be considered at the next meeting.* 2. полагать, считать: *He is considered clever.* 3. принимать во внимание, учитывать: *There were many things we had to consider before taking a decision.* 4. считаться (с кем-л., чем-л.): *You must always consider the feelings of other people.*

considerable *a* значительный, важный, большой: *There was a considerable increase in production of such machinery.* Ant. **inconsiderable**

considerably *adv* значительно: *It has become considerably colder this week.* Ant. **inconsiderably**

considerate *a* внимательный (к другим), деликатный, тактичный: *We must be considerate of the comfort of other people. She is so considerate. It's pleasant to deal with her.* Ant. **inconsiderate**

consideration *n* 1. рассмотрение, обсуждение; **under consideration** на рассмотрении, рассматриваемый, обсуждаемый: *The question under consideration is very important to give a problem one's careful consideration* тщательно обсуждать вопрос; **to take into consideration** принимать во внимание. 2. внимание, предупредительность, уважение; **to show great consideration for smb.** быть очень предупредительным к кому-л.

6. **conspire** *v* устраивать заговор, тайно замышлять, сговариваться (**against** против кого-л.)

conspiracy *n* конспирация, заговор, тайный сговор: *a conspiracy to overthrow the government; a conspiracy of silence*

conspirator *n* заговорщик

7. **consent** *v* соглашаться, уступать; позволять, разрешать: *They consented to our plan.*

consent *n* согласие, разрешение:

He was elected to the post by general (common) consent. Silence gives consent. (proverb) Молчание — знак согласия:

8. **delay** *v* откладывать, задерживать, препятствовать, медлить, опаздывать: *They delayed discussing the question. The plane was delayed two hours by bad weather.*

delay *n* отсрочка, задержка, промедление: *They must start without delay.*

9. **amount** *n* количество, сумма, итог; **a large amount of work** много работы

amount *v* 1. доходить (to до какого-л. количества); составлять (сумму), равняться: *The bill amounts to £40.* 2. быть равным, равнозначным: *This amounts to a refusal.* Это равносильно отказу.

10. **attach** *v* 1. прикреплять, привязывать: *to attach a seal to a document; to attach a stamp.* 2. привязываться (oneself): *The cat attached itself to the boy at once.* 3. приписывать, придавать; **to attach importance to smth.** придавать значение чему-л., считать что-л. важным

attached *a* 1. привязанный, преданный (кому-л.): *The boys were greatly attached to their old nurse.* 2. прикрепленный: *The oar attached to the boat was broken.*

attachment *n* 1. привязанность, преданность, 2. прикрепление

11. **superior** *a* 1. высший, лучший, высшего качества: *This coat is made of superior cloth.* 2. превосходный, превосходящий: *The enemy attacked us with superior forces.* Ant. **inferior**

superiority *n* старшинство, превосходство: *The superiority of the socialist economic system over the capitalist one has long been proved.* Ant. **inferiority**

EXERCISES

1. a) *Give Russian equivalents for the following.*

1. Nearly sixty when I first knew him, he must have written already some fifteen books. 2. The year of which I write had been to my friend Bruce the devil, monetarily speaking. 3. Imagine his having only just realized the cinema. 4. How could I market it without carte blanche? 5. Should I be justified in taking advantage of that? 6. The words were on the tip of my tongue, but I choked them back. 7. I promptly rough-shaped it for the film. 8. Then I was faced with the temptation to put his name to it. 9. If I took it to a film company as an authorless scenario, I should only get authorless terms. 10. If I could have been quite open, I could certainly have done better. 11. At last I hit on a way that by introducing my own interest might break my fall. 12. They want something to balance the banality of their lives.

b) *Find English equivalents for the following in the text.*

1. Я думаю, что не было еще писателя, который бы оставался таким равнодушным к тому, что думает о нем публика. 2. Его книга не имела никакого спроса у читателя. 3. Как вы напрасно тратите время! 4. Мне было забавно писать его. 5. Я ушел, озабоченный по поводу моего друга. 6. Я не видел этому конца. 7. Я не прочитал и двух страниц, как вскочил, сел снова и продолжал читать. 8. Любая кинокомпания ухватится за сценарий. 9. В течение нескольких часов я обдумывал этот вопрос. 10. Наконец я решился на компромиссный путь. 11. В течение недели я торговался с ними в отношении условий контракта. 12. Этот контракт дал бы по крайней мере еще две тысячи фунтов стерлингов до истечения договорного срока. 13. Секрет непременно раскроется. 14. Не мог ли бы я устроить так, чтобы адвокат сообщил ему, что он вдруг стал наследником? 15. Я не сочту это унижительным для себя. 16. Я ждал, что разразится буря. 17. Я хожу в кино через день.

2. *Fill in the blanks with words from the following list:*

to amount, to amuse, amusement, assertion, to attach, consent, conspiracy, to convince, consideration, to neglect, scruples, scrupulous, superiority

1. A convincing proof of the ... of the socialist system is the rising standards of living of the Soviet people. 2. After a thorough ... of all the questions the resolution was passed by

an overwhelming majority. 3. The speaker's ... was not convincing, he ought to have at least proved it by some examples. 4. Little Roden seldom saw his beautiful mother who was always busy with her own affairs and ... her son. 5. We knew Bruce to be too ... to accept money even from his friends. 6. At that time nobody ... any importance to the incident, which was later to change the whole course of their lives. 7. In summer the children would ... themselves swimming in the river, rowing or fishing. 8. Lord Stenly was at the head of the ... against the king. 9. Whatever Mary said to ... her father that Mike was an excellent young man, Mr Smith would not give his ... to their marriage. 10. Mr Blake used to borrow money from all his friends and servants without 11. The winter vacation offers plenty of 12. Your hasty departure would ... to a refusal to participate in the discussion.

3. *Give Russian equivalents for the following.*

man of genius, man of principle, man of distinction, man of decision, man of no principles, man of no scruples, man of ideas

4. *Give English equivalents for the following; make up sentences with the word combinations.*

претерпеть операцию, вручать ультиматум, столкнуться с (проблемой и пр.), нанести удар, сопроводительная записка, широкая публика, ходить вокруг да около, потрудиться что-л. сделать, из-за отсутствия (денег)

5. *Recall the situations in which the following words and word combinations are used in the text.*

to neglect, to take the trouble to find out, to be on the tip of one's tongue, to be faced with a temptation, to let somebody into a secret, to beat about the bush, to despise

6. *Correct the following statements using the words and word combinations in brackets.*

1. Bruce read all the critical articles in the Press and wrote his novels to suit the people's taste. (to neglect, to be indifferent to)
2. His last book was received warmly by the public. (to be a complete frost)
3. It was hard work for Bruce to write his skit and it took him a long time to complete it. (straight off, to amuse)
4. The author was not quite sure that the scene would in-

- terest some film company. (to be convinced, to catch at)
5. It happened to be rush time with the film companies, so the production of the film was delayed. (slack time, to rush on)
 6. Galsworthy came to the point at once and told Bruce about the film made from his skit. (to beat about the bush, a confession)
 7. The author was sure Bruce would gladly agree to any sum of money for his scenario. (scruples)
7. *Complete the following sentences according to the model.*

Model: (Если им правильно воспользоваться), the scenario was a gold-mine.

If properly handled the scenario was a gold-mine.

1. The machine can work a long time, (если с ней как следует обращаться). 2. (Если им дать возможность), they will cope with the difficulties themselves. 3. The matter seems to be very serious, (когда его рассматриваешь с этой точки зрения). 4. (Если ее хорошенько подготовить), the conference can yield favourable results. 5. The proposal seems to be quite acceptable, (если его тщательно обсудить). 6. (Если его тщательно разработать), the plan can hasten the implementation of our programme.

8 *Supply the missing parts of the sentences.*

1. Mary used to be very particular about such things as answering letters, but now... 2. Jack used to go to the cinema every other day, but when ... 3. My parents used to consent to anything I should suggest when... 4. My little brother and myself used to conspire against our strict grandmother while ... 5. These tricks used to amuse everybody, but ...

9. *Refer the sentences to the past. Make changes if necessary.*

Model: You needn't hurry. There is a lot of time before the departure of the train.

You needn't have hurried. There *was* a lot of time before the departure of the train.

1. You needn't doubt his skill. So far all his operations have been successful. 2. Your sister needn't hesitate about making that trip. She will enjoy it. 3. Smith needn't brief them on the agenda of the conference. It has been typed and distributed among the participants. 4. Ann needn't confide such

things to anyone. They concern her private life. 5. Mary needn't worry about her children. They are safe and sound with us.

10. *Use the appropriate form of the infinitive after needn't.*

1. I (to reserve) five seats since I knew there were only three of us. 2. Jane (to reserve) five seats. Didn't she know Jim had refused to join us? 3. She (to remove) the table from the corner. Now it seems to be in everyone's way. 4. I (to remove) the table from its place. Someone else had done so for me. 5. You (to yield) that point to them. It was one of the main points in our plan. 6. Mary (to yield) any point to them for they did not make any attempt to argue.

11. *Paraphrase the following sentences. Use the modal verb need.*

1. Is there any use your regretting those words? 2. It was quite unnecessary for Nick to go there. Victor went there himself and it was just a waste of time for him. 3. Is it so necessary that you should discuss such questions at every meeting? 4. There is no need for you to write her a letter today: she is coming to Moscow in a day or two. 5. It was not necessary for the artists to live on credit now; they had got a lot of money for the pictures.

12. *Translate into English. Use the modal verb need.*

1. Вам не нужно убеждать нас, что это голословное утверждение. Мы вполне согласны с вами. 2. Нужно ли вам тратить время на переделку сюжета? Он очень занимателен. 3. Нам не нужно было откладывать нашу поездку; все было совершенно готово вчера. 4. Не обязательно вам было посылать им телеграмму: вы могли позвонить им. 5. Она говорит, что нам не нужно спешить. 6. Напрасно вы беспокоились. Я знал, что все будет в порядке.

13. *Insert should with the appropriate form of the infinitive given in brackets.*

1. You ... (to warn) me beforehand that I was to speak at the meeting. I am not ready. 2. She ... (not to give up) her research; she had always attached great importance to it. 3. You ... (not to neglect) your studies. Then you wouldn't have failed at the exam. 4. My opinion is that we ... (to speak) in favour of this plan. Why should we oppose it? 5. The patient

... (to take) that medicine according to the prescription; then he would have recovered by now.

14. *Translate into English. Use the modal verb should.*

1. Вам не следовало жаловаться на него родителям; вы должны были сами поговорить с ним. 2. Вам бы надо поехать в Ленинград и осмотреть достопримечательности этого замечательного города. 3. Конечно, ты должна была предупредить их раньше. Почему ты этого не сделала? 4. Не следует быть таким нетерпеливым! Ты ответишь, когда тебя спросят. 5. Ты не должен судить о людях по их внешности, ты можешь ошибиться.

15. *Insert ought with the appropriate form of the infinitive given in brackets.*

1. Linday thought that he ... (not to accept) this sacrifice from Madge. 2. Nick ... (to know) who he was dealing with. 3. You ... (not to break) that frightful news to her so unexpectedly. She was shocked. 4. Mrs Brown absolutely hates people smoking and thinks there ... (to be) a law against smokers. 5. I'm sure you .. (not to come) at all, you look frightfully tired.

16. *Translate into English. Use the modal verb ought.*

1. Писатель не должен быть равнодушен к тому, что думают читатели о его книгах. 2. Не спорь с мистером Доном, тебе следует уважительно относиться к его возрасту. 3. «Вам следует больше работать над фонетикой», — сказал преподаватель. 4. Тебе следовало позвонить ему вчера; ведь ты знаешь, что он болен.

17. *Fill in the blanks with must, to have (to), to be (to), need, should, ought. Use the proper forms of the infinitives in brackets.*

1. The producer said that if I meant the manuscript for a film I ... (to alter) it a little. 2. The scenario was accepted and production ... (to start) in a few weeks. 3. As Bruce's friend I considered that I ... (not to conspire) with the publishers as that would mean letting them into the secret and lying to Bruce, which would not be fair. 4. After beating about the bush a little I said: " ... I (to explain) to you that the cinema is a great amusement nowadays, and if you can give the public a

thrilling film you ... (to do) so. The money is yours and you ... (to take) it." 5. When I left Bruce after handing him the money I understood that I ... (not to be) afraid of his prickly pride and of his superior notions, I ... (to tell) him the truth from the start. 6. You ... (to prove) your point yesterday, then people would have believed you. 7. You ... (not to convince) me that the film is thrilling. I've already acquainted myself with the scenario. 8. "After your long illness you ... (to go) to the seaside to rest and amuse yourself," the doctor advised. 9. John realized that if he wanted to be independent of his stepfather he ... (to work) and earn money. 10. "You ... (not to yield) to the temptation of taking the easiest road to success. You ... (to work) hard," Father used to say. 11. It is unaccountable that he should have given his consent to that doubtful undertaking: as an honest man he ... (not to consent) to it, he ... (to have) some scruples. 12. They gave John a cheque and he ... (to cash) it and lodge the money at the Bank that very day. They ... (to do) all this themselves two days before but they had no time to do it. 13. Dr Linday knew that being a physician he ... (to help) his patient whoever he might be. 14. Something ... (to do) immediately to rescue the Gadfly, and Martini felt he ... (to put aside) all selfish doubts and do his best to save Rivarez.

18. *Translate into English.*

1. Автор понимал, что ему не следует добиваться постановки фильма без ведома Бруса. Но ему все же пришлось начать дело без его согласия. 2. Автору вовсе не нужно было бояться говорить Брусу о его планах, так как последний умирал с голоду и без стеснения принял бы деньги. 3. Бруса, должно быть, очень забавляло сочинять эту вещь, и он никак не ожидал, что публике серьезно понравится то, что он считал лишь пародией. 4. Когда Брус услышал о том, что его вещь будет поставлена, он подумал: «Мой друг, должно быть, шутит!» 5. Автор был очень озабочен тем, что же станет с его больным другом. 6. Тебе следует вначале постараться выяснить, во сколько обойдется это путешествие. 7. Договор должен был быть подписан на прошлой неделе. 8. Некоторые поговаривают о том, что обвинителю в деле об убийстве не следует быть таким мстительным. 9. Мне нет необходимости представлять вас м-ру Смиту, так как вы уже знакомы с ним. 10. М-р Марлоу не очень опытный инженер. Вам следовало принять это во внимание. 11. Это первоклассный спектакль. Вы не должны были пропускать его. 12. Майк должен

навещать своего больного друга. 13. Джону не следует так часто занимать деньги.

19. a) *Translate into Russian.*

1. However hard he should try, he cannot *take me in* with such incredible stories. 2. Having much in common the boys *took to* each other at once. 3. He spoke English perfectly and we all *took him for* an Englishman at first. 4. "Why should you *take* such a trifle *to heart*," his brother said. "*Take it easy*." 5. After a short interval caused by his illness he *took up* rowing again. 6. Aunt Emily found the boy *taking after* his grandfather both in looks and character. 7. "You may *take it from me*, his play will be a success," she said. 8. On weekends Sam would sometimes *take Jane out* to dinner. 9. The beauty of the surrounding scenery *took our breath away*. 10. He seems to have *taken it into his head* that he is a great painter.

b) *Replace the italicized parts of the sentences with word combinations with to take.*

1. "The young man who *has been inviting* Ann to the theatre and to restaurants is going to propose to her," said Mr Brown. 2. Don't try *to deceive* me. I see through you. 3. He *has made up his mind* to become a musician and after his failure as a pianist he *has begun to practise* playing the violin. 4. To hear him talk you might *think he is* an honest man. 5. What do you *think I am*? 6. You may well *believe* me, it's a conspiracy. 7. Lucy *is very much like* her mother in manner. 8. We *were quite overwhelmed* by her brilliant performance. 9. I *liked* her the moment I saw her. 10. It was a few years ago that he *started* writing. 11. You mustn't *be so distressed about* her failure.

c) *Translate into English using word combinations with to take.*

1. Возьмите на себя труд получить деньги по чеку. 2. Не следует принимать его за дурака. Его такими сказками не обманешь. 3. Он ошеломил нас своей потрясающей новостью. 4. Если бы ты не ходил вокруг да около, они не принялись бы снова обсуждать этот вопрос. 5. Он вбил себе в голову, что дети заброшены. 6. За кого ты меня принимаешь? 7. Не принимай так близко к сердцу ее согласие участвовать в этом спектакле. 8. Поверьте мне, это не моя вина. 9. Он вдруг пристрастился к курению. 10. Своди-ка ее куда-нибудь. Надо бы ее развлечь. 11. Она чувствует свое превосходство и не берет на себя труда скрывать это. В этом она похожа на брата.

d) *Translate the following words and word combinations into English. Use word combinations with to take in sentences of your own.*

интересоваться, фотографировать, записать, принять ванну, потрудиться сделать что-л., стараться, укрыться, перевести дыхание, гордиться чем-л., измерить температуру, воспользоваться чем-л., заметить

20. *Answer the following questions.*

1. What made the author feel concerned about Bruce?
2. Why did that year turn out to be especially difficult for Bruce?
3. What was it that Bruce had written when the author came to see him?
4. What plan did the author work out to help Bruce?
5. Why was it difficult for the author to implement his plan?
6. How did the author tell Bruce what had become of his skit?
7. Why did Bruce conceal his frequent visits to the cinema?
8. What do you think of Bruce?

21. *Retell the text according to the following plan.*

- a) Bruce.
- b) Bruce's script.
- c) The author's speculations how to handle the script.
- d) The contract the author finally signed.
- e) The author breaks the news to Bruce.
- f) Bruce's reaction.

22. *Speak on a film you've seen recently.*

23. *Retell the jokes.*

1

The theatre was very crowded. The rich man called over an usher and promised him a sizable tip if he'd give him a down-front aisle seat. "I love mystery pictures," the rich man explained, "but I can't enjoy any movie unless I see it up close."

The usher led the way down and managed to find a seat for the rich man. As he sat down, the man gave the usher his tip — one thin dime.

The usher looked at the tip. Then he bent down and whispered in the rich man's ear, vengefully: "The butler did it."

A certain playwright is a very slow and meticulous worker. He once promised a producer a new play, and when a full year went by without any further word from the playwright, the producer began to feel a little impatient. Phoning the playwright, he demanded: "Where's the play? I want to get the cast assembled, start rehearsals — —"

"It's coming along, coming along," the playwright assured him. But the producer wanted something more definite.

"Just how far have you got with it?" he asked.

"Well," the playwright said, "you know it's to be in three acts and two intermissions. I've just finished the intermissions."

24. *Render in English.*

Придя домой, известный испанский кинорежиссер Луис Бунуэль не услышал знакомой болтовни своего попугая по кличке Писарро.

Обыскали весь дом, но птицы не нашли. Наверно, забыли закрыть окно.

Как рассказывают очевидцы, Бунуэль близко принял к сердцу исчезновение любимца, но к этим чувствам постепенно начало примешиваться беспокойство, когда Бунуэль подумал о неприятностях, которые могут возникнуть для него, если будут услышаны политические высказывания Писарро. И Бунуэль дал в газету следующее объявление:

«Пропал попугай красно-желтого цвета по кличке Писарро. Умеет говорить и свистеть. Должен заметить, что политических взглядов Писарро я не разделяю. Попугай является подарком, полученным мною от одного иностранца».

Lesson 10

GRAMMAR: MODAL VERBS *CAN*, *MAY*

A. can

Present Indefinite — *can*

Past Indefinite and Subjunctive — *could*

1. We *can speak* English. Мы умеем говорить по-английски.
Can you swim? Вы умеете плавать?
She *cannot come* today as she is busy. Она не может сегодня прийти, так как она занята.
He tried to lift the box but he *could not*. Он попытался поднять коробку, но не смог.
Could you spare me some minutes? Не могли бы вы уделить мне несколько минут?
If you had asked me I *could have helped* you. Если бы вы меня попросили, я бы мог вам помочь.

(mental or physical ability or ability depending on circumstances)

2. In interrogative and negative sentences:
Can you like such films as this? Неужели вам нравятся такие фильмы, как этот?
Can he still be waiting for her? It must be very late already. Неужели он все еще ждет ее? Должно быть, уже очень поздно.
Can he have forgotten that we were to meet at the conference at 5 o'clock? Неужели он забыл, что мы должны встретиться в 5 часов на конференции?
This *cannot be* Lucie! She *cannot have changed* so much. Не может быть, чтобы это была Люси! Не может быть, чтобы она так сильно изменилась!
She *cannot be sitting* in the garden now, it is raining! Не может быть, чтобы она все еще сидела в саду, ведь идет дождь.

(surprise, disbelief, wonder, doubt, indignation, etc.)

Could you have liked such a dull novel? Неужели вам понравился такой скучный роман?
She couldn't have left without saying good-bye. Не может быть, чтобы она уехала, не попрощавшись.

(greater degree of doubt, surprise, etc.)

B. *may*

Present Indefinite — *may*

Past Indefinite and Subjunctive — *might*

1. *May I take* the book? Можно мне взять эту книгу?
Mrs Smith said that I *might use* her library whenever I chose. Миссис Смит сказала, что я могу пользоваться ее библиотекой, когда захочу.
Might I go behind the wings and *speak* to the stage-manager? He is a friend of mine. Нельзя ли мне пройти за кулисы и поговорить с режиссером? Он мой друг.

(asking for or having permission)

2. I don't know for certain but the letter *may now be* in her possession. Я не знаю наверняка, но письмо, вероятно, сейчас у нее.
Though it is rather late he *may still be waiting* for our call. Хотя уже и поздно, он, возможно, все еще ждет нашего звонка.
He *may have concealed* something from us. Возможно, он что-нибудь скрыл от нас.

(supposition, probability)

We haven't heard anything about him. He *might be* somewhere in the South or he *might already have returned* to Minsk. Мы ничего не слышали о нем. Возможно, он где-нибудь на юге или уже вернулся в Минск.

(supposition, possibility with a degree of doubt)

3. Only *might*:

You are always late. I think you *might come* in time, at least on such days. Вы всегда опаздываете. Я думаю, вы могли бы, по крайней мере в такие дни, приходить вовремя.
You *might have warned* me and this wouldn't have happened. Вы могли бы предупредить меня, тогда этого не случилось бы.

(reproach)

THE FIRST MEN IN THE MOON

(by *H. G. Wells*)

Herbert George Wells (1866—1946) was born at Bromley, Kent. His father was a small shop-keeper.

He began his career as a novelist with a science fiction story "The Time Machine" (1895).

His novels and short stories, in which a daring fantasy is coupled with a sharp criticism of capitalist society, brought Wells world fame.

In 1920 Wells visited Russia and had a long talk with V. I. Lenin. He sympathized with the Soviets but couldn't bring himself to believe in the possibility of making backward Russia an industrial country.

His best works are "The Invisible Man", "The First Men in the Moon", "The Island of Doctor Moreau", "The Food of the Gods", "The Wheels of Chance", "Love and Mr Lewisham".

The window at which I worked looked over the skyline of the crest, and it was from this window that I first set eyes on Cavor. It was just as I was struggling with my scenario.

He was a short, round-bodied, thin-legged little man. He gesticulated with his hands and arms, and jerked his head about and buzzed like something electric. He stopped, pulled out a watch, hesitated. Then with a sort of convulsive gesture he turned and retreated with every manifestation of haste.

I regarded the incident simply as an annoying distraction — the waste of five minutes. I returned to my scenario. But when next evening the apparition was repeated with remarkable precision, and again the next evening, and indeed every evening when rain was not falling, concentration upon the scenario became a considerable effort and I cursed him pretty heartily. Then my annoyance gave way to amazement and curiosity. Why on earth should a man do this thing? On the fourteenth evening I could stand it no longer, and as he appeared I directed myself to the point where he invariably stopped.

"One moment, sir," said I as he turned.

He stared.

"This, I presume, is your time for exercise?"

"It is. I come here to enjoy the sunset — the atmosphere — I go along this path..."

"You don't. It's all nonsense."

He looked at me — reflected. "My mind is much occupied," he said. "And you want to know why! Well, sir, I can assure

you that not only do I not know* why I do these things, but I did not even know I did them. You see," he said weakly, "it's a habit. I must stop it."

"I do hope, sir, my impertinence — "

"Not at all, sir," he said.

We regarded each other for a moment. I raised my hat and wished him a good evening.

The next evening I saw nothing of him, nor the next. But he was very much in my mind, and it occurred to me that as a sentimental comic character he might serve a useful purpose in the development of my plot. The third day he called upon me. He made indifferent conversation in the most formal way,¹ then abruptly he came to business. He wanted to buy me out of my bungalow.

"You see, Mr Bedford, I'm an investigator — I am engaged in a scientific research. I live" — he paused and seemed to think. "Just over there. And my circumstances are abnormal. I am on the point of completing one of the most important demonstrations that have ever been made. It requires constant thought, constant mental ease and activity."

It occurred to me that I would like to know more of this research: it would be a relief from play-writing.

He was quite willing to supply information. He talked for nearly an hour, and I must confess I found it a pretty stiff bit of listening. Half his words were technicalities entirely strange to me.

The object of Mr Cavor's search was a substance that should be "opaque" — he used some other word I have forgotten, but "opaque" conveys the idea — to all forms of radiant energy.

Almost all substances are opaque to some form or other of radiant energy. Glass, for example, is transparent to light, but much less so to heat, so that it is useful as a fire-screen; and alum is transparent to light, but blocks heat completely.

Now all known substances are "transparent" to gravitation.

You can use screens of various sorts to cut off the light or heat, or electrical influence of the sun, or the warmth of the earth from anything; but nothing will cut off the gravitational attraction of the sun or the earth. Yet Cavor did not see why such a substance should not exist. He believed he might be able to manufacture this possible substance opaque to gravitation out of a complicated alloy of metals and something new — a new element, I fancy — called *helium*.

*... not only do I not know... ...я не только не знаю... (inversion for emphasis sake)

The chance that had brought me into the very birth-chamber of this new time — it was an epoch, no less — was one of those chances that come once in a thousand years.

The thing unrolled, it expanded and expanded. Among other things I saw a parent company, and daughter companies, and concessions spreading and spreading, until one vast, stupendous Cavorite company ran and ruled the world.

I took my line straight away. I knew I was staking everything, but I jumped there and then.

"We're on absolutely the biggest thing that has ever been invented," I said, and put the accent on "we."

He seemed surprised at my enthusiasm, but not a bit suspicious or hostile.

I jumped up. I paced the room, gesticulating like a boy of twenty. I tried to make him understand his duties and responsibilities in the matter — *our* duties. I assured him we might make wealth enough to work any sort of social revolution we fancied, we might own and order the whole world. A look of perplexity came into his little face.

He stammered something about indifference to wealth, but I brushed all that aside. He had got to be rich. I gave him to understand the sort of man I was, and that I had had very considerable business experience. The understanding of a Cavorite monopoly grew up between us. He was to make the stuff and I was to make the boom.

I remember the occasion very distinctly when Cavor told me of his idea of the sphere.

"It's like this," he said. "Imagine a sphere, large enough to hold two people and their luggage. It will be made of steel lined with thick glass; it will contain a proper store of solidified air, concentrated food, water-distilling apparatus, and so forth. And enamelled on the outer steel—"

"Cavorite?"

"Yes."

"But how will you get inside?"

"That's perfectly easy. An air-tight manhole is all that is needed. That, of course, will have to be a little complicated; there will have to be a valve, so that things may be thrown out, if necessary, without much loss of air."

"I begin to see," I said slowly. "And you could get in and screw yourself up while the Cavorite was warm, and as soon as it cooled it would become impervious to gravitation, and off you would fly in a straight line —"

"At a tangent."

"What is to prevent the thing travelling in a straight line into space for ever?" I asked.

"I've just thought of that," said Cavor.

"The inner glass sphere can be air-tight, and except for the manhole, continuous, and the steel sphere can be made in sections, each section capable of rolling up after the fashion of a roller blind. Well, when all these windows or blinds are shut, no light, no heat, no gravitation, no radiant energy of any sort will get at the inside of the sphere, it will fly on through space in a straight line, as you say. But open a window, then at once any heavy body that chances to be in that direction will attract us. For example, one might go to the moon."

"And when one got there? What would you find? Is there air?"

"There may be. And I have no doubt there will be minerals," said Cavor, "sulphur, ores, gold perhaps, possibly new elements."

"Cost of carriage,"** I said. "You know you're *not* a practical man. The moon's a quarter of a million miles away."

"It seems to me it wouldn't cost to cart any weight anywhere if you packed it in a Cavorite case."

I had not thought of that. "Delivered free*** on head of purchaser, eh?"

An extraordinary possibility came rushing into my mind. Suddenly I saw, as in a vision, the whole solar system threaded with Cavorite liners and spheres de luxe. "Rights of pre-emption" came floating into my head.

"This is tremendous!" I cried. "This is Imperial."

"Go on", said Cavor, as I sat across the edge of the manhole and looked down into the black interior of the sphere.

I drew my other leg inside and slid down the smooth glass to the bottom of the sphere, then turned to take the cans of food from Cavor. The interior was warm, the thermometer stood at eighty,² and as we should lose little or none of this by radiation, we were dressed in shoes and thin flannels. By Cavor's direction I placed the packages, the cylinders of oxygen and so forth, loosely about my feet, and soon we had everything in. Cavor then crawled in after me.

I assisted him to screw in the glass cover of the manhole, and then he pressed a stud to close the corresponding blind in the outer case. We were in darkness.

** cost of carriage стоимость перевозки

*** Delivered free... Доставка бесплатно...

There came a little jerk, a noise like champagne being uncorked in another room, and a faint whistling sound.

"That little jerk was the start. Already we are flying as swiftly as a bullet up into the gulf of space," said Cavor.

For a time I was stunned. Then I perceived an unaccountable change in my bodily sensations. It was a feeling of lightness, of unreality. Coupled with that was a queer sensation in the head and a thumping of blood-vessels at the ears. Neither of these feelings diminished as time went on, but at last I got so used to them that I experienced no inconvenience.

Cavor pointed to the loose cases and bundles that had been lying on the blankets in the bottom of the sphere. I was astonished to see that they were floating now nearly a foot from the spherical wall. I thrust out my hand behind me, and found that I too was suspended in space.

I understood we were cut off from all exterior gravitation only the attraction of objects within our sphere had effect.

Everything that was not fixed to the glass was falling towards the centre of gravity of our little world, which seemed to be somewhere about the middle of the sphere, but rather nearer to myself than Cavor, on account of my greater weight. It was the strangest sensation floating thus loosely in space, not disagreeable at all, exceeding restful.****

Four windows were open in order that the gravitation of the moon might act upon all the substances in our sphere. I found I was no longer floating freely in space, but that my feet were resting on the glass in the direction of the moon.

"Are we visible from the earth?" I asked.

"It would need the most powerful telescope on earth to see us as the minutest speck."

I saw for a moment our mother planet — a planet in a downward sky. The huge terrestrial disc filled all heaven. It was plain to see that the world was a globe. The vast gray stretches of the Atlantic shone like silver under the receding day. I think I recognized the cloud-dimmed coast lines of France and Spain and the south of England.

Cavor examined the apparatus for absorbing carbonic acid and water, and pronounced it to be in satisfactory order, our consumption of oxygen having been extraordinarily slight.

**** **exceeding restful** исключительно успокаивающее. **Exceeding** here is an adverb. Some adverbs may have two forms: the common one with the adverb forming suffix-ly and the one without it, identical with the corresponding adjective (**awful good, do this quick**).

And so we fell through a space of time that had neither night nor day in it, silently, softly, and swiftly down towards the moon.

One day Cavor suddenly opened six of our shutters and blinded me so that I cried aloud at him.

Now we had come to the real danger of our journey. Cavor proposed to bind all our luggage together with the blankets about it, against the concussion of our descent. That was a strange business; we two men were floating loose in that spherical space, packing and pulling ropes, every effort resulting in unexpected movements.

"Cover yourself with a blanket," Cavor cried, and for a moment I did not understand.

Then I hauled the blanket from beneath my feet and got it about me and over my head and eyes. Abruptly Cavor closed the shutters, then suddenly began snapping them all open. There came a jar and then we were rolling over and over, bumping against the glass and against the big bale of our luggage, and clutching at each other, and outside some white substance splashed as if we were rolling down a slope of snow.

Came a thud, and I was half buried under the bale of our possessions, and for a space everything was still.

We were lying in the darkness of the shadow of the wall of the great crater into which we had fallen.

NOTES

1. He made indifferent conversation in the most **formal** way. The English **formal** corresponds to the Russian официальный, номинальный, формальный, внешний (*относящийся к внешней форме*).

a formal call официальный визит

formal independence номинальная (формальная) независимость

a formal resemblance внешнее сходство

The English **official** corresponds to the Russian служебный (*связанный с исполнением служебных обязанностей*), формальный («казенный»), официальный.

official duties служебные обязанности

an official style «казенный» стиль

an official statement официальное заявление

an official representative официальный представитель

2. ...the thermometer stood at **eighty** = 80° F (Fahrenheit).
The Fahrenheit thermometer has 32° for the freezing point and 212° for the boiling point of water.

WORD COMBINATIONS

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>to set (one's) eyes on видеть
to give way to уступить, эд. сме-
ниться чем-л.
to see nothing of smb. не видаться
с кем-л.</p> | <p>to come to business заговорить о
деле, приступить прямо к делу
to make the boom рекламировать,
создавать шумиху</p> |
|--|--|

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **regard** *v* 1. смотреть на, раз-
глядывать: *For a moment we
regarded each other, neither of
us speaking.* 2. считать, рас-
сматривать, относиться: *Ever-
ybody regards him as a hero.*
as regards что касается: *As
regards the apparatus I should
say it is very complicated.*
regard *n* 1. уважение, располо-
жение: *I have a high regard
for him.* 2. pl. поклон, при-
вет: *Give my best regards to all
at home.* 3. отношение; **in
this regard** в этом отношении:
*I disagree with you in this re-
gard.* **in (with) regard to** что
касается, в отношении. **Syn.**
concerning
regardless of *prep* не обращая вни-
мания, незирая на, не счи-
таясь с: *We shall start tomor-
row regardless of the weather.*
regarding *prep* относительно: *His
opinion regarding that problem
is rather peculiar.*
2. **annoy** *v* досаждать, докучать,
надоедать, раздражать: *I am
annoyed with you because you
wouldn't listen to reason.*
annoyance *n* досада, раздражение:
*My annoyance was great when
he refused to help us.*
annoying *a* досадный, раздражаю-
щий: *Isn't it annoying to miss
the train?*
3. **precision** *n* точность, четкость:
*He followed their instructions
with great precision.*
precise *a* точный, определенный,
- четкий: *It is precise data that
we need.*
- precisely** *adv* 1. точно: *He answer-
ed all the questions precisely.*
2. именно, совершенно верно
(как ответ): *"Did Tom ring
you up?" "Precisely, he did."*
4. **indifferent** *a* 1. безразличный,
равнодушный: *How can you be
so indifferent to their suffer-
ings?* 2. нейтральный, неза-
интересованный, беспристраст-
ный. 3. посредственный, не-
значительный: *an indifferent
pianist; an indifferent book*
indifferently *adv* равнодушно, без-
различно
indifference *n* безразличие, равно-
душие (to, towards): *His indif-
ference to the matter shocked us.*
5. **require** *v* 1. требовать, прика-
зывать: *He required that the
boys keep quiet.* 2. нуждаться,
требовать: *The problem re-
quires thorough study.*
requirement *n* требование, необхо-
димое условие; **to meet the
requirements** удовлетворять
требованиям
6. **complete** *v* 1. заканчивать, за-
вершать: *The construction of
the building is not yet complet-
ed.* 2. комплектовать: *I need
one more volume to complete
my set of Thackeray's novels.*
complete *a* 1. полный, закончен-
ный: *He has got a complete
edition of Galsworthy's works.*
2. совершенный: *It was evi-*

dent that he was a complete failure.

completely *adv* совершенно, полностью, вполне: *His intentions have changed completely.*

completion *n* завершение, окончание, заключение: *The experiment is nearing its completion.*

7. **confess** *v* 1. признавать(ся), сознавать(ся): *Mary confessed to me that she had been consulting them.* 2. исповедоваться: *The Gadfly was so naive that he confessed everything to his priest.*

confession *n* признание: *I was bored by the confession.*

8. **influence** *n* влияние, действие, воздействие (*on, upon, over* на): *Tolstoy's influence on world literature was great. I have little influence with him. Я для него не авторитет. a person of influence* влиятельное лицо; *to exercise one's influence* оказывать влияние; *under the influence of* под влиянием чего-л., кого-л.

influence *v* оказывать влияние, влиять: *Weather influences crops.*

influential *a* влиятельный: *I thought him to be influential in those circles.*

9. **hostile** *a* неприятельский, враждебный, вражеский (*to*): *I saw a hostile look in his eyes. Ant. friendly*

hostility *n* враждебность: *Strangely enough he feels no hostility toward*

his rival. hostilities pl. военные действия; *to open (stop, suspend) hostilities* пачать (прекратить, приостановить) военные действия

10. **weight** *n* 1. вес, тяжесть, бремя: *What is the weight of your luggage? to put on weight* полнеть, поправляться; *to lose weight* худеть. 2. влияние, значение, важность: *an argument of great weight*

weightless *a* невесомый

weightlessness *n* невесомость

weighty *a* тяжелый, обремененный; веский, важный: *a weighty argument*

weigh *v* 1. взвешивать; весить, иметь вес: *Let's weigh the sack. How much does it weigh? 2. обдумывать, взвешивать, оценивать: to weigh the advantages and disadvantages; to weigh one's words*

11. **vision** *n* 1. зрение, видение: *That is beyond our vision.* 2. видение, мечта, образ: *She appeared like a wonderful vision. Visions of power and fame blinded him.*

visible *a* 1. видимый: *The whole district is visible from the top of this mountain. Ant. invisible.* 2. ясный, очевидный: *He has done it without any visible cause.*

visibly *adv* явно, очевидно, заметно: *He was visibly annoyed.*

visibility *n* видимость: *There was good visibility that day.*

EXERCISES

1. a) Give Russian equivalents for the following.

1. Then with a sort of convulsive gesture he turned and retreated with every manifestation of haste. 2. I regarded the incident simply as an annoying distraction — the waste of five minutes. 3. He made indifferent conversation in the most formal way. 4. He wanted to buy me out of my bungalow. 5. It would be a relief from playwriting. 6. The chance had brought

me to the very birth-chamber of this new time. 7. The thing unrolled, it expanded and expanded. 8. We're on absolutely the biggest thing that has ever been invented. 9. The understanding of a Cavorite monopoly grew up between us. 10. I took my line straight away. 11. I knew I was staking everything. 12. Suddenly I saw, as in a vision, the whole solar system threaded with Cavorite liners and spheres de luxe. 13. Coupled with that was a queer sensation in the head and a thumping of blood-vessels at the ears. 14. I was astonished to see that they were floating now nearly a foot from the spherical wall. 15. We two men were floating loose in that spherical space, packing and pulling ropes, every effort resulting in unexpected movements.

b) *Find English equivalents for the following in the text.*

1. Именно из этого окна я и увидел впервые Кейвора. 2. Но на следующий день явление повторилось с поразительной точностью. 3. Мне стало трудно сосредоточиться над сценарием, и я проклинал его от всего сердца. 4. Скоро досада сменилась удивлением и любопытством. 5. Я направился к тому месту, где он неизменно останавливался. 6. Я все время напряженно думаю. 7. Следующие два вечера он не появлялся. 8. Для этого требуется сосредоточенность, покой, энергия. 9. Я обнаружил, что слушать его было нелегко. 10. Я решил действовать напрямик. 11. Нужен только герметически закрывающийся люк. 12. Термометр показывал восемьдесят градусов по Фаренгейту. 13. Я почувствовал необъяснимую перемену в своих физических ощущениях. 14. Наряду с этим — странное ощущение в голове и звон в ушах. 15. Видны ли мы с Земли? 16. Затем я вытащил одеяло из-под ног и закутался с головой. 17. Я был наполовину погребен под тюком багажа.

2. a) *Paraphrase the italicized parts of the following sentences. Use words and word combinations from the following list:*

to annoy, to complete, to confess, hostile, indifferent, to influence, precision, to regard, regardless of, to require, a requirement, visible, vision, to weigh

1. Cavor sighed with satisfaction when he had *finished* his experiments and found the necessary alloy. 2. Pyle did not notice Fowler's *unfriendly* stare and went on chattering. 3. You must *consider* the advantages and disadvantages of the plan before accepting it. 4. Only in her letter did Madge *reveal* to Rex that she had persuaded Linday to save his life at the price

of her love. 5. Hostilities went on *in spite of* the protests from all over the world. 6. I'd *consider* it a slip of the pen rather than lack of knowledge.

b) *Fill in the blanks with words from the above list.*

1. Nobody ought to remain ... if the matter concerns peace. 2. Modern science makes it possible to calculate the trajectory of rocket flights with great ... 3. When the travellers looked back the little hut appeared still ... on the top of the hill. 4. Sam and Bill were terribly ... by the boy's behaviour. 5. Being strongly ... by the ideas and views of Arnold Jackson, Edward Barnard gave up all his ambitions and settled down in Tahiti for good. 6. The village was beyond our ... now since we were on the other side of the crest. 7. The sportsmen had to train a lot to meet the ... of the contest.

3. *Use the modal verb can in its appropriate form followed by the necessary form of the infinitive in brackets.*

1. He ... (not to persuade) her to go to the South. She was determined to spend the summer at the Baltic sea. 2. They ... (not to delay) the discussion of the problem. It is of great significance for all of us. 3. ... he (to resign)? What ... (to cause) his unexpected resignation? 4. ... you (to remove) your hat? I can't see the screen. 5. He ... (not to fail) to understand the real cause of your anxiety. 6. ... he (to play) a joke on you again? 7. ... they still (to sign) the message? We want to have it dispatched as quick as possible. 8. "Sir Humphrey Gwynne went out to a grand legal dinner. ... he (to return) already?" wondered the servant. 9. "If you ... (to persuade) him to come here I ... (not to doubt) he ... (to help) me," said Holmes.

4. *Paraphrase the following sentences. Use the modal verb can.*

1. I don't believe he has mistaken you for your sister. 2. Is it possible that the lawyer should have committed such an error? 3. It is impossible that they should not see the advantage of our starting at sunrise. 4. Is he really still hesitating whether he should accept our offer? 5. "It is impossible that I should have mislaid the keys to this drawer again," she mumbled searching her pockets. 6. I don't believe that they did not recognize you.

5. *Translate into English. Use the modal verb can.*

1. Неужели он уже закончил свой эксперимент? Кажется, что эта работа потребует много времени. 2. Не может

быть, чтобы он дал согласие выполнить такое количество работы в такой короткий срок. 3. Не могли бы вы обменяться местами со мной? Отсюда ближе к выходу. 4. Ваш помощник мог подписать это письмо вчера без вас. Оно не требовало специального рассмотрения. 5. Не может быть, чтобы они еще не разрешили этого вопроса. 6. Он не мог не догадаться, что этот человек — иностранец. 7. “Не может быть, чтобы вы знали всех этих людей!” — воскликнул Андерхилл.

6. *Use the modal verb may in its appropriate form followed by the necessary form of the infinitive in brackets.*

1. “... I (to watch) the performance on your TV to-night?” the boy asked me. 2. “Something unexpected ... (to cause) a change in his plans,” thought Bateman. 3. “Why has the delivery of goods been stopped?” “The firm ... (not to observe) the terms, I think.” 4. This evidence ... (to play) its part in the trial. 5. So you haven't brought the book again. Don't you think you ... (to be) more considerate of others? 6. For all I know he ... (to write) another play now, his first one having been staged with success. 7. “He ... (to let) Isabel know about it in due time instead of causing her such anxiety,” muttered Bateman.

7. *Translate into English. Use the modal verb may.*

1. Могу я открыть ему правду? Я уверен, что он не осведомлен о некоторых событиях. 2. Почту, возможно, еще не рассортировали, и нам придется подождать. 3. Он обещал прийти вовремя, но предупредил нас, что может задержаться на работе. 4. Уже три часа. Он может вернуться в любую минуту. 5. Теперь они, возможно, уже закончили свой опыт. 6. «Может быть, вы не застанете его в живых», — сказала миссис Хадсон. 7. Я знал, что в мое отсутствие могло произойти самое худшее.

8. *Fill in the blanks with could or might. Translate into Russian.*

1. “... you come tomorrow again?” “Of course, I ... but I think you ... do without my help at least for once.” 2. Dr Jones said Ann's health ... be completely restored very soon now. 3. I think you ... persuade him to join us if only you tried. 4. We ... missed the boat had we left ten minutes later. 5. Pete said John ... not forget his promise, but he ... have been detained by something unexpected. 6. “... you think of no other way you ... have got this thing?” cried Smith. 7. “An interviewer ... very well get over the wall, for I ... not make anybody hear at the front door,” said Flood. 8. Of course, he ... be inno-

cent; but he did enter the garden in an irregular fashion. 9. He ... not have realized the cinema has been going since 1900.

9. *Complete the English sentences with the phrases given in brackets. Use modal verbs.*

1. Something has annoyed her; (что бы это могло быть)?
2. (Неужели можно оставаться равнодушным) to the results of such important experiments?
3. The matter (возможно, обсуждалось) already several days; yet we can't consider it settled.
4. I think you (могли бы закончить) your work a month ago. What have you been doing all this time?
5. (Не мог ли бы я отчитаться) for my observations in writing?
6. (Неужели вы не поняли) the difference in the approach to the matter regardless of the weighty arguments he produced?
7. (Не может быть, чтобы они встретили) your proposal with hostility.
8. He (возможно, действовал напрямик и поговорил) about the requirements of the programme to Mr Powell himself instead of to his assistant.
9. Mr Bedford (наверное, рассматривал) Cavor's project merely as a means of making wealth.
10. Mike regards every remark made by Ned as a manifestation of his hostile attitude. He (не следует быть) so sensitive.
11. "The first sputniks (не должны были весить) as much as the succeeding space-ships," said the boy. "They (должны были нести) some apparatus only."

10. *Translate into English*

a) *orally:*

1. Неужели это незначительное происшествие *так раздосадовало* вас?
2. Такие вопросы *требуют* тщательного рассмотрения, не так ли?
3. Не может быть, чтобы он был *безразличен* к вашему мнению!
4. Возможно, *требования* соревнований на этот раз были слишком высокими.
5. Не думаете ли вы, что он мог бы выполнить работу с большей *точностью*?
6. Я давно мог бы *взвесить* все «за» и «против» этого плана, но я совсем забыл о нем.
7. Не могли бы вы *повлиять* на него? Он пренебрегает всеми своими обязанностями.
8. Его ответы, должно быть, *не отвечали* экзаменационным требованиям.

b) *in writing:*

1. Неужели они возражали даже против такого веского довода?
2. Не может быть, чтобы странное появление этого человека не привлекло внимания писателя.
3. «Вы бы не могли сказать мне точное время?» — спросил изобретатель. — «Понимаете, мой опыт требует большой точности во всем».

4. Если бы сценарий Бруса не имел такого успеха, он, возможно, ни за что не сознался бы, что сам любит смотреть фильмы. 5. Неужели все его усилия не привели ни к чему? Изобретатель, возможно, не принял во внимание влияние земного притяжения. 6. Вы бы могли сразу сознаться, что совершенно несведущи в физике, вместо того чтобы уверять нас, что сможете помочь. 7. «Как вы могли бы объяснить то, что на ваш сплав не влияет земное притяжение?» — спросил Кейвора Бедфорд.

11. а) *Translate into Russian.*

1. the point of a pencil, a point made by a pencil, the point where they met, the boiling point of water, the first point of the plan, a point of view, a turning point, one's strong or weak point

2. He *made a point of* discussing with us beforehand all the matters that are to be considered at tomorrow's meeting. 3. He *makes a point of* getting up early. 4. Your remark is quite *to the point*. 5. He has been talking for half an hour already but has not yet *come to the point*. 6. *Keep to the point* and don't go into unnecessary detail. 7. His clever illustrations *gave point to* his arguments. 8. I do not see anything funny in what you've said, I'm afraid I have *missed the point of* your joke. 9. There is *no point in* trying to avoid speaking about this matter. 10. He promised to help us but when it *came to the point* he said he had no time.

б) *Paraphrase the italicized parts of the sentences. Use word combinations with point.*

1. Madge *was about to* step into the boat when Linday stopped her. 2. He *laid special stress on* always being the first to come to the lessons. 3. I think it *is useless* ringing him up at this time of the day, he is sure to be out. 4. We waited for him *to begin to speak about the essence of the matter* at last, but he seemed to have forgotten all about it. 5. He *called our attention to* our mistakes. 6. I'm afraid you *haven't understood*. 7. The pathos in his voice *made his appeal still more emphatic*.

в) *Translate into English. Use word combinations with point.*

1. Хотя Линдей казался суровым человеком, он не смог принять жертву Мэдж, *когда дошло до дела*. 2. «Когда я приеду в ваш город, я *непременно постараюсь* увидеть вас», — писал он в своем письме. 3. То, что на собрании присутствовал сам автор, *придало особую остроту* обсуждению нового романа. 4. Должно быть, он силен в математике. 5. Я понял,

что я должен *говорить по существу* или вовсе молчать.
6. Не может быть, чтобы он не *понял сути* твоего замечания!
7. Октябрьская революция явилась *поворотным пунктом* в истории всего человечества. 8. Первый *пункт* повестки дня — вопрос о помощи развивающимся странам.

12. *Answer the following questions.*

1. Under what circumstances did Bedford see Cavor for the first time?
2. How did Cavor account for his strange behaviour?
3. What was the purpose of Cavor's visit to Bedford some days later?
4. Why did Cavor's story about his investigations seem "a pretty stiff bit of listening" for Bedford?
5. What was the object of Cavor's research?
6. What kind of substance was Cavor trying to invent?
7. What was Bedford's idea about the tasks of each of the men in the future Cavorite monopoly?
8. How was the sphere to be guided to fly straight to its destination?
9. How were the two men dressed for their flight and what did they take with them?
10. What did the men feel at the start and during the flight?
11. What were Bedford's impressions of our planet seen from the sphere?
12. Where did the sphere fall?
13. *Correct the following statements using the words and word combinations in brackets.*
 - a) Bedford had no idea how to handle business. (to expand, a parent company, daughter companies, to make wealth, to understand one's duties and responsibilities, to have considerable business experience, to make a boom, cost of carriage, rights of pre-emption, to deliver)
 - b) Bedford understood every technical term used by Cavor when the latter described his invention. (to find smth. a pretty stiff bit of listening, technicalities entirely strange to smb., substance, opaque)
 - c) The sphere was to be made of iron and supplied with an open hole for the men to get in. (steel, to be lined with smth., to be enamelled, air-tight, a valve, to screw)
 - d) During their flight Cavor and Bedford kept sitting on the bales of their possessions leaning against the wall. (unaccountable, queer, a feeling of lightness, loose, to float, to

be suspended, to be cut off from exterior gravitation, fixed the centre of gravitation, sensation)

14. *Retell the text according to the following plan.*

- a) Bedford's first encounter with Cavor.
- b) The object of Cavor's research.
- c) Planning a flight to the Moon.
- d) The flight in space.
- e) Hitting the Moon.

15. *Topics for oral and written work.*

- a) Think of a possible sequel and end to the story.
- b) Prove what is possible and what is impossible in the story from the point of view of modern science.
- c) Recall some other novels of science fiction the ideas of which have been realized.
- d) Speak on the latest achievements in the field of cosmic flights.

16. *Tell the text and speak on the history of space flight and on manned spaceflight.*

From the History of Space Flight

April 12, 1961, will forever remain a landmark in human history as the date on which began the exciting story of Man's conquest of the cosmos.

But this story did not start on the morning of April 12 — it started many thousand years ago. And those who participated in it were not only those scientists, engineers and technicians who directly contributed to the success of this flight. Behind the army of engineers and workers who built and tested the rockets, the spaceship, the thousand and one mechanical and electronic devices that would ensure the cosmonaut's safety, was also an invisible line of his comrades from the past, the dreamers whose dreams were now to be fulfilled, who had laid the scientific foundations for a flight into space.

While all other experts suggested only gun-powder rockets Tsiolkovsky believed that liquid-fuel rockets alone could reach the extraordinary heights necessary for space travel. He suggested "rocket-trains", "step-rockets" or, as they are called today, multi-staged rockets to attain a speed which would put the spaceship into orbit. He calculated the amount of fuel a rocket needs to break through the resistance of the earth's

atmosphere. He even calculated the angle at which the rocket must take off and laid down that its guidance and control must be fully automatic. The cosmic velocity required to neutralize gravity and send a spaceship into orbit, he computed, is 8 kilometres per second — the exact speed at which the Vostok I orbited the Earth!

Fifteen minutes after the launching of the Vostok I, radar stations in the Aleutian islands picked up its radio signals and before long the world learned that a Soviet man was in space.

Everything worked according to schedule. At a command from the Earth the spaceship began to slow down. This was the supreme test for the thermal-control system, and though the ship was descending in a ball of fire, the temperature in the cabin remained steady at about 20° C. The spaceship was rapidly losing height and, as the atmospheric pressure became bearable, Juri Gagarin prepared for the landing, his eyes fixed on the altitude meter.

Gagarin's flight has become a demonstration of the tremendous scientific advance and industrial power of the Soviet Union.

Lesson 11

GRAMMAR: MODAL VERBS *WILL, SHALL*

A. will

Present Indefinite — *will*

Past Indefinite and Subjunctive — *would*

1. The Soviet people *will* always *stand* for the cause of peace. Советский народ всегда будет твердо стоять за дело мира. Mr Dale is so experienced in this field, he can help us to solve these problems if he *will*. Мистер Дейл имеет такой опыт в этой области, что он может помочь нам решить эти задачи, если захочет.
“*I would do anything in the world to make Mary happy,*” said the young man. «Я готов сделать все, чтобы Мэри была счастлива», — сказал молодой человек.

(will, intention, determination)

I would rather have a cup of coffee, I don't like tea for breakfast. Я бы предпочел чашку кофе, я не люблю пить чай за завтраком.

Victor *would sooner die* than betray his comrades. Виктор скорее бы умер, чем предал своих товарищей.

I would rather you went there alone without me. Я бы предпочел, чтобы ты пошел туда один без меня.

(preference, desire)

2. Whatever I say he *won't listen* to me. Что бы я ни говорил, он не хочет меня слушать.
They tried to persuade Rose to leave the town but she *wouldn't agree*. Они пытались уговорить Роз уехать из города, но она никак не соглашалась.
Something was wrong with the lock; no matter how hard we tried, it *wouldn't open*. Что-то случилось с замком. Как мы ни старались, он никак не открывался.

(stubborn unwillingness to yield, usually
in the negative form)

3. "Mr Christie is much better now. Every morning he *will* go to the seashore to breathe fresh air," Mrs Christie said to the doctor. «Мистеру Кристи сейчас гораздо лучше. Каждое утро он ходит на берег моря подышать свежим воздухом», — сказала миссис Кристи доктору.
In summer the children *would* go to the river early in the morning and *would swim* to their hearts' content. Летом дети (бывало) уходили на речку рано утром и купались сколько им было угодно.

(habitual or repeated actions)

4. *Will* you *try* and *find* the book I asked you about? Не пытаетесь ли вы найти книгу, о которой я вас спрашивал? *Would* you *pass* me the salt, please? Передайте мне, пожалуйста, соль.

(usual form of request)

B. shall

1. All countries concerned *shall* assist the organization in every way, the agreement said. Все заинтересованные страны должны (обязуются) всячески помогать организации, говорилось в договоре.
"He *shall* do it immediately whether he likes it or not," she said firmly. «Он должен сделать это немедленно, нравится ему это или нет», — твердо сказала она.

(obligation, compulsion)

2. "This toy *shall be* yours if you behave yourself," Jimmy's mother promised. «Эта игрушка будет твоя, если ты будешь хорошо вести себя», — пообещала мать Джимми.
If you sit in the draught you *shall catch* cold. Если вы будете сидеть на сквозняке, вы простудитесь.
"I'll take revenge. You *shall see*," Bob said to Tom. «Я отомщу. Ты увидишь», — сказал Боб Тому.

(promise, warning, threat)

3. "*Shall* I go on translating?" asked the student. «Переводить дальше?» — спросил студент.

(asking for further instructions)

FIRST STEPS IN COLONIAL POLICY

(by *Ralph Fox*)

Ralph Fox (1900—1937), an outstanding critic and writer, was born in the town of Halifax (England) in March 1900.

R. Fox eagerly welcomed the October Revolution and in 1920 travelled to Soviet Russia to see for himself the construction of the new society. Upon returning to Britain Fox made an intensive study of the Marxist classics and threw himself whole-heartedly into the struggle for a better future of his people.

In 1933 R. Fox wrote his "Biography of Lenin". In 1936 he went to Spain and became Political Commissar of the Anglo-Irish company of the International Brigade. He died in action against the fascists in January 1937.

His writings include fiction, literary criticism and essays: "Captain Youth" (1922), a comedy "People of the Steppes" (1925), "Colonial Policy of British Imperialism" (1933), "Marx and Engels and the Irish Question" (1933), "Class Struggle in Britain" (1934), "Communism" (1935), "France Faces the Future" (1936), "Portugal Now" (1937), "The Novel and the People" (1937).

The extract below is taken from the book "Colonial Policy of British Imperialism".

Serfdom was abolished in England much earlier than in other European countries (at the end of the fourteenth century). The development of commodity relations inside the old self-contained feudal society rendered this inevitable, while at the same time the abolition of serfdom was accompanied by a big development of merchant capital. The wool trade was the first great export trade of England, carried on particularly with the countries of Northern Europe. The first English colonies were in the Straits of Dover, on what is now French territory, and guaranteed the unhindered carrying on of that trade.

Decaying English feudalism, already beginning to sicken with the new capitalist society which was growing within its framework,* was brought into conflict with its nearest neighbour and most powerful obstacle to the development of trading, French feudalism. The "Hundred Years War", which followed between the two countries, brought both of them to the verge of extinction and anarchy.

* ...already beginning to sicken with the new capitalist society which was growing within its framework... ... в недрах которого уже зарождалось новое капиталистическое общество....

In England the old feudal aristocracy, unable to rule the country any longer and hold down the rising tide of peasant revolt, was replaced after a bitter struggle by a new landed aristocracy, which was closely connected with trading and had enriched itself by the confiscation of the church lands, the chief support of feudal economy in the country, and one of the greatest obstacles to the fullest development of commodity production. The new landlord, interested in the rise of capitalist production, the enemy of the Catholic Church, which was the chief support of medieval feudalism, became for a time the leading figure upon the English scene.

So it came about that the discovery of the American continent and the sea route to India by the Spanish and Portuguese navigators brought much more advantage to an England already well advanced on the road to capitalist development and having the natural advantage of an island position on the new sea routes, than it did to the feudal monarchies of the Iberian peninsula.

Trading companies, having behind them the open support of the State, began to wage a piratical war against Spanish colonies. This war was carried on on both sides with the utmost ruthlessness, but most of all the plundered native population of America suffered from it. For both the English and Spaniards exploited it mercilessly, enslaving it and forcing it to work till completely worn out. In the end the struggle became an open war between both countries, and England, less hampered by feudalism and with a more advanced naval technique, completely defeated Spain in the maritime war which followed. Soon after this, on the east coast of North America and the west coast of Africa, the first English colonies were founded as trading posts.

The end of the sixteenth and beginning of the seventeenth century saw a great development of the new "line" of trade which brought with it colossal profits — the trade in black slaves which was carried on between Africa and the West Indies. Whole Negro tribes were kidnapped and sold in America and the West Indies for work on the sugar and tobacco plantations. For over one hundred years England fought with her rivals for the monopoly of the slave trade. During all this period warlike contests with Spain and Holland never ceased. As a result of successful military and naval attacks on Spain, England in 1713 managed to obtain the monopoly of the slave trade with the Spanish colonies. The prosperity of such great and wealthy cities of England as Bristol and Liverpool was founded on the huge profits of this slave trade. The slave trade was carried

on right up to the first quarter of the nineteenth century, that is, until with the development of industrial capitalism in England, slave labour became less profitable and the export of slaves from Africa less advantageous.

Moreover, at this time the Spanish Empire in South America began to collapse and was embraced by a great national revolutionary movement, which destroyed one of its most profitable markets.

A great part of the primitive accumulation of capital, thanks to which the development of industrial capitalism became possible, came from the profits of the slave trade. For two centuries, from the end of the sixteenth to the beginning of the nineteenth, the English bourgeoisie accumulated immense wealth at the price of unheard-of sufferings of the African tribes, as well as at the price of endless wars with those states who were England's rivals in the slave trade. Up to the middle of the eighteenth century trading capital developed its activity chiefly in the Atlantic basin. All the great powers whose shores were washed by the waves of the Atlantic — England, Holland, France, Spain and Portugal — struggled among themselves for domination in this huge basin surrounded by three continents, Europe, Africa and America.

This period saw the bourgeois revolution in England. In 1642—1648 the English town bourgeoisie, in alliance with the more progressive portion of the aristocracy interested in trade, and with the active support of the peasants and plebeian elements in the towns, who flocked into the revolutionary armies, made a final settlement of accounts with feudalism. The bourgeois revolution and the dictatorship of Cromwell, clearing the road for the free development of capitalism, gave England a great advantage over her rivals. Only Holland had anything like a similarly developed bourgeoisie, but the Dutch burgher preferred to put his money into trade rather than production, and proved weaker than its English neighbour. Cromwell began a series of naval wars which ended in the final defeat of Holland.

The aggressive bourgeois dictatorship of Cromwell allowed the English to colonise the chief islands of the West Indies and to strengthen and develop their colonies on the east coast of North America. Then with terrible cruelty Ireland was overrun and the armies of the revolutionary bourgeoisie massacred the population of whole cities without distinction of age or sex. On the West coast of Africa the number of trading posts for the slave trade was considerably increased.

Having successfully defeated its internal enemy (feudalism) the English bourgeoisie greedily turned to the winning of new markets and such territories as would give them valuable luxury and food products. From America the English imported food, furs, tobacco, rice; from the West Indies sugar, from Africa black slaves for work on the American and West Indian plantations. Ireland the English divided into great estates, which were given over to English landlords, while the ruined and landless peasantry was left to die of hunger. Nor did Cromwell forget to provide for his army. Many of his soldiers were settled as "colonists" on the stolen lands of the Irish peasants, while with inexorable class justice the most revolutionary wing of the Army, recruited from the peasantry and town poor, the "Levellers" and "Diggers",** was transported as slaves to the West Indies and America.

WORD COMBINATIONS

to carry on trade вести торговлю
to make a settlement of accounts
сводить счета
to clear the road for расчищать до-
рогу (кому-л., для чего-л.)

so it came about that... случилось
так, что ...
to wage war вести войну
to obtain the monopoly добиться
монополии

ACTIVE VOCABULARY

1. **abolish** *v* отменять, уничто-
жать, упразднять: *Later on the
taxes were abolished.*

abolishment *n* отмена, уничтоже-
ние, упразднение

abolition *n* отмена (договора, до-
кумента, закона и т. д.): *John
Brown fought for the abolition
of slavery.*

2. **relation** *n* 1. отношение, связь,
зависимость: *the relation of
the forces of peace and those of
war.* pl. отношения: *The rela-
tions between the Soviet Union
and the People's Democracies
are based on equality.* 2. род-
ственник: *He is a relation of
mine on my mother's side.* in

relation *to* относительно, что
касается: *In relation to the
above said I must say I quite
agree.* Syn. **as regards, concern-
ing**

related *a* связанный, родственный:
*Are these two problems related
in any way? The representa-
tives of UNESCO and related
organizations attended the con-
ference.*

relative *a* относительный, срав-
нительный: *One can notice re-
lative progress in this industry.
See the previous data.*

3. **render** *v* 1. приводить в какое-л.
состояние: *The accident ren-
dered her helpless.* 2. оказывать,
воздавать; **to render help** (assis-

** **Levellers** and **Diggers** — two parties that existed at the time of the bourgeois revolution in Britain. The Levellers were representatives of the petty bourgeoisie. They demanded a Republic but defended private property. The Diggers expressed the interests of the poorest peasantry. They demanded that all the land should be distributed among the tillers.

- tance**) оказывать помощь; **to render a service** оказывать услугу. 3. исполнять, передавать: *to render a piece of music; to render a text in another language*
- rendering** *n* 1. оказание (услуги, помощи и т. д.). 2. перевод; изложение; передача. 3. исполнение
4. **unhindered** *a* беспрепятственный
- hinder** *v* мешать, препятствовать: *He was hindered in his work by lack of experimental data.*
- hindrance** *n* препятствие, помеха: *The baby's cry in the neighbouring room was a serious hindrance to his studies.* Syn. **obstacle**
5. **advance** *v* 1. продвигаться вперед, наступать: *In the course of four days the troops advanced seventy miles.* Ant. **retreat**. 2. делать успехи, развиваться: *Our country has already advanced very far on the road to Communism.* 3. выдвигать (предложение, возражение): *May I advance my proposal on the matter?*
- advance** *n* 1. продвижение, наступление. Ant. **retreat** 2. успех, прогресс: *Science has made a great advance during the last 50 years.* Syn. **progress**
- in advance** *adv* вперед, заранее: *He knew in advance that jokes of that kind would fall flat with the audience.*
- advanced** *a* прогрессивный, продвинутый, развитый, передовой. Ant. **backward**
6. **profit** *n* 1. польза, выгода: *I've read it to my profit.* Syn. **advantage**. 2. прибыль, доход: *Adam sold a bicycle at a profit of ten shillings.*
- profit** *v* извлечь выгоду (by из чего-л.): *I do not think you will profit much by following his advice.*
- profitable** *a* прибыльный, выгодный, доходный
- profiteer** *n* спекулянт
7. **prosperity** *n* процветание: *The prosperity of these English towns was founded on the huge profits of slave trade.*
- prosper** *v* процветать, преуспевать: *Big monopolies were prospering in those years on numerous war orders.*
- prosperous** *a* процветающий
8. **domination** *n* господство, власть, преобладание: *The national liberation movement in the colonies put an end to British domination in those countries.*
- dominate** *v* 1. господствовать, властвовать: *For some period of history British imperialists were dominating in many African countries.* 2. доминировать, преобладать
- dominant** *a* господствующий, доминирующий: *This point of view is still dominant among a certain section of people.*
9. **alliance** *n* союз, альянс: *the alliance of the workers and peasants.* **in alliance with** в союзе с
- ally** *n* союзник; **the Allies** союзники, Антанта
- allied** *a* родственный, близкий, союзнический; **the allied troops** союзнические войска
10. **prefer** *v* предпочитать (to чему-л.): *I've got orange and apple juice. Which do you prefer?*
- preferable** *a* предпочтительный
- preference** *n* предпочтение; то, чему отдается предпочтение: *He has a preference for French novels.*
11. **Increase** *v* возрастать, увеличивать(ся) (в числе, размере, степени); расти: *The annual output of the enterprise has increased by ten per cent in the last two years.* Ant. **decrease**
- increase** *n* рост, увеличение: *There was a noticeable increase in the population of the town.* Ant. **decrease**

EXERCISES

1. a) *Give Russian equivalents for the following.*

1. The development of commodity relations inside the old self-contained feudal society rendered this inevitable. 2. The first English colonies were in the Straits of Dover, on what is now French territory, and guaranteed the unhindered carrying on of that trade. 3. The discovery of the American continent and the sea route to India brought much more advantage to an England already well advanced on the road to capitalist development than it did to the feudal monarchies of the Iberian peninsula. 4. Both the English and Spaniards exploited the population mercilessly, enslaving it and forcing it to work till completely worn out. 5. England, less hampered by feudalism and with a more advanced naval technique, completely defeated Spain. 6. The end of the sixteenth and beginning of the seventeenth century saw a great development of the new "line" of trade. 7. During all this period warlike contests with Spain and Holland never ceased. 8. At this time the Spanish Empire in South America began to collapse and was embraced by a great national revolutionary movement. 9. This period saw the bourgeois revolution in England. 10. The English bourgeoisie made a final settlement of accounts with feudalism. 11. Only Holland had anything like a similarly developed bourgeoisie. 12. Ireland the English divided into great estates while the ruined and landless peasantry was left to die of hunger.

b) *Find English equivalents for the following in the text.*

1. Загнивающий английский феодализм, в недрах которого уже начало развиваться новое капиталистическое общество, пришел в столкновение с наиболее серьезным препятствием, стоящим на пути развития торговли, — французским феодализмом. 2. Последовавшая затем столетняя война между этими двумя странами привела их на грань вымирания. 3. Они совершали грабительские набеги на испанские колонии. 4. Целые негритянские племена насильно вывозились и продавались в Америке. 5. Процветание этих крупных и зажиточных городов Англии основывалось на огромных прибылях от работорговли. 6. Английская буржуазия накопила огромное богатство ценою неслыханных страданий африканских племен. В этот период произошла буржуазная революция в Англии. 7. Крестьяне и беднейшие слои городского населения массами шли в революционную армию. 8. Голландский бюргер предпочитал вкладывать капитал в торговлю, а не в произ-

водство, и оказался слабее своего соседа — английской буржуазии. 9. Кромвель начал ряд морских войн, окончившихся полным поражением Голландии.

2. a) *Paraphrase the italicized parts of the sentences. Use words and word combinations from the following list:*

to abolish, abolition, advanced, century, to hinder, to increase, to profit, in relation to, to render, rivalry

1. The *competition* between England and Spain for the monopoly of the slave trade continued for over *one hundred years*. 2. During the maritime wars England was a more *developed* country than Spain. 3. In the fifteenth century constant conflicts with French feudalism *put obstacles in the way of* capitalist development. 4. Both England and Spain *benefited* much from the slave trade. 5. It was only in 1861 that serfdom *was done away with* in Russia. 6. The *liquidation* of serfdom in Russia as everywhere else was accompanied by a big development of merchant capital. 7. The Soviet Union is known *to have been giving* disinterested assistance to developing countries. 8. As *regards* Holland it must be said that the Dutch burgher preferring to put money into trade rather than into production *made* the development of capitalism more difficult. 9. With the number of the unemployed *growing* from day to day, it was impossible for Fulton to find a job.

b) *Fill in the blanks with words from the following list:*

advance, advanced, alliance, allied, to dominate, to increase, to prefer, profit, prosperous, relations, to render

1. Fascist Germany waged a predatory war against the Soviet Union in ... with the fascist government of Italy. 2. In the winter of 1942—43 the Soviet Army began its great ... along the whole line of the front. 3. H. G. Wells was astonished that the backward, poor, underdeveloped Russia should have become an ... country. 4. Only in the summer of 1944 did the ... troops open a second front in Europe. 5. After the Second World War the number of socialist countries is known ... 6. The injustice of capitalist society consists in a handful of monopolists extracting huge ... at the cost of merciless exploitation of the overwhelming majority of the working masses. 7. The monument to the Unknown Soldier erected on the hill ... the view in the central park in Kiev. 8. What would you ..., going to the cinema or watching the TV programme tonight? 9. The

principle of peaceful co-existence requires that friendly ... should be established and maintained among nations. 10. It is common knowledge that in the USA, a so-called ... country, there are millions of unemployed.

c) *Translate into English using the vocabulary of the lesson.*

1. Известно, что *торговля рабами* была очень *выгодна* буржуазии. 2. Как называется этот *полуостров*? 3. Случилось так, что это *туземное* поселение было разграблено и сожжено дотла. 4. Когда они *предприняли* последний *налет* на эту испанскую колонию? 5. Такая политика наверняка приведет страну на *грань катастрофы*. 6. Капитализм зарождался в *рамках* феодализма. 7. В России *крепостное право* было отменено в 1861 году. 8. Ты бы мог *поручиться*, что он придет вовремя? 9. Напрасно феодалы вели борьбу с новой *земельной аристократией*. Их поражение было предопределено историей. 10. Как ни могущественна была Испания, она в конце концов *потерпела поражение*. 11. У них, должно быть, была более *развитая* техника. 12. Рабочий класс России в *союзе* с беднейшим крестьянством сверг царизм. 13. *Господству* Испании в Атлантическом океане не суждено было продлиться долго. 14. В результате политики *грабежа* война между этими странами стала *неизбежной*. 15. Известно, что большая часть армии Кромвеля была *завербована* из крестьян. 16. Добившись монополии в этой отрасли торговли, английские купцы стали *господствовать* на азиатских рынках.

3. *Translate the following adjectives. Use them in sentences of your own.*

unprecedented, untold, unheard of, uncalled for, unarmed, unharmed, unfinished

4. *Give English definitions for the following words.*

a rival, serfdom, a peninsula, an anarchist, commodity relations, piracy, an unprecedented event, an ally

5. a) *Give English equivalents for the following.*

вести войну (борьбу), вести торговлю (работу), проводить политику, проводить человека (домой, на станцию), вести (руководить), вести хозяйство, вести жизнь, вести себя

b) *Fill in the blanks with the appropriate verb from those given in brackets.*

1. Our country ... a policy of peace and peaceful co-existence.

2. It wasn't easy for her to ... the house for so large a family.
 3. "... yourself!" Mother said to Johnny. 4. We ... our friends to the railway station. 5. The English ... wool trade with the countries of Northern Europe. 6. The Communist Party ... our country to the victory of Communism.

(to wage, to lead, to see, to conduct, to pursue, to run, to carry on, to behave)

6. a) *Study the following sentences with inversion and translate them into Russian.*

1. *Never had he dreamed* of such a wonderful opportunity.
 2. *Little did I know* at that time the meaning of war. 3. *In vain were we trying* to persuade the boy to tell the truth. 4. *So quickly did Bill run* that Sam could not catch up with him. 5. *Not until* Madge pronounced the first words, *did* Linday recognize her. 6. *Not only did Grace write* a love letter to Ray, she even signed it with her own name. 7. Cavor did not seem suspicious of my enthusiasm; *nor did he seem* hostile. 8. *Terrible though* the accusation was he did not lose control of his temper. 9. *Hardly (scarcely) had* the Swede *held up* his hand *when* the doctor brought the edge of his hand down on the swollen finger. 10. *No sooner had Cavor pressed* the stud *than* the sphere took off.

b) *Open the brackets and use inversion.*

1. Little (Guy and Ralph, to suppose) that the joke would backfire. 2. Never (Bedford, to hear) of such an extraordinary possibility. 3. Complicated as (the problem, to be) we found a successful solution at last. 4. No sooner (the young men, to leave) the telephone exchange than Grace began to cry. 5. So hostile (his look, to be) that I felt ill at ease. 6. "Not only (I, not to know) why I do these things but I did not ever know I did them," Cavor said weakly. 7. Not until Cavor explained the object of his search, (Bedford, to decide) to stake everything. 8. Hardly (Cavor, to close) the blind when there came a little jerk. 9. In vain (he, to try) to concentrate upon his scenario, now it had become a considerable effort. 10. Bruce did not consider the press, nor (he, to take) the trouble to find out the taste of the public.

c) *Make the sentences emphatic. Use inversion.*

1. The slave trade stopped *only when* slave labour became less profitable. 2. Cromwell gave the Irish land, divided into

great estates, over to English landlords. He *did not* forget to provide for his army *either*. 3. The discovery of the American continent brought advantages *not only* to Spain and Portugal, but to England as well. 4. *Though* the Spanish navy *was strong* it was defeated in 1713 after the English undertook several successful attacks against it. 5. The African population will *never* forget the time when whole Negro tribes were kidnapped and sold as slaves. 6. Cromwell had *hardly* colonised the chief islands of the West Indies *when* he overran Ireland with terrible cruelty. 7. The Irish tried to resist Cromwell's attacks, but *in vain*; they were massacred without distinction of age or sex. 8. The English feudal aristocracy *little* suspected that a new capitalist society was growing within the framework of feudalism. 9. The doctor *not only* saved the man's life, he devoted himself to the problem of making him whole and strong again. 10. Madge had *scarcely* held out her hand, prepared to step into the boat, when Lindsay stopped her. 11. He had *never* seen such a beautiful grove of coconut trees on the beach. 12. Pyle could *little* understand the situation in Saigon. 13. Bateman tried *in vain* to persuade Edward to leave Tahiti. 14. Edward's tone was *so* singularly persuasive *that* Bateman couldn't refuse to do him a favour and agreed to dine at Jackson's.

d) *Translate into English. Use inversion.*

1. Только после того как было отменено крепостное право, в Англии стал интенсивно развиваться торговый капитал. 2. Едва начали развиваться новые капиталистические отношения в Англии, как страна пришла в столкновение со старой феодальной Францией. 3. Первые колонии Англии приносили ей не только прибыль, но и обеспечивали беспрепятственное ведение торговли шерстью со странами северной Европы. 4. И не (мало же) предполагал Колумб, когда хотел найти морской путь в Индию, что его путешествие закончится открытием нового континента. 5. Напрасно пыталось ограбленное население колоний сопротивляться безжалостному порабощению и эксплуатации. 6. Хотя и могущественна была Англия, ей пришлось сражаться со своими соперниками за монополию на работоторговлю более ста лет. Ни разу (никогда) в течение этого периода не прекращались военные столкновения с Испанией и Голландией. 7. Не успела Англия получить монополию на работоторговлю, как начала получать огромные прибыли, и города ее начали процветать.

7. *Translate into Russian.*

1. "Father is so stubborn, he won't give his consent to our marriage," complained Helen. 2. Lucy remembered her granny's presenting her with a beautiful pair of nail-scissors that wouldn't cut. 3. In his youth Gerald led an idle good-for-nothing life. In the morning he would ride in the park, every night he would dine out and twice a week he would go to the Opera. 4. "Would you like me to escort you to the dining-room, Miss?" asked Sir John with a smile. 5. "I would rather she called me by my Christian name," thought Robert. 6. "I'd rather you didn't interrupt me every other minute," aunt Agatha said stiffly. 7. But why would you not let me near you, since there was in truth no infection?

8. *Translate into English. Use the modal verb will.*

1. По воскресеньям отец, бывало, водил детей в детский театр. 2. Автор с радостью опубликовал бы сценарий, если бы только Брус захотел дать свое согласие на это. 3. Мы старались убедить Николая рассказать нам, где он провел целый день, но он никак не хотел раскрыть свой секрет. 4. «Я сделаю все, что могу, чтобы оправдать ваше доверие», — заявил молодой инженер, на которого возложили ответственность за эту работу. 5. Я бы предпочел, чтобы вы сообщили мне об этом заранее. 6. Как мы ни старались, чемодан никак не открывался. Не могу понять, что с ним такое. 7. «Ты хочешь сказать, что убьешь его, ничего для него не делая. Ты ведь можешь его спасти, если захочешь», — сказала Мэдж.

9. *Translate into Russian.*

1. All international laws can and shall be observed. 2. "They are ungrateful, I shall teach them a lesson. They shall pay dearly for their insult", Chandu thought of the elders. 3. How dare you hurt the child! You shall answer for it! 4. "If only we succeed in realizing our plan there shall be no difficulties about money," Carl persuaded. 5. If you don't put on your raincoat you shall be soaked through. 6. Shall I take opera-glasses or are our seats near the stage? 7. Your laziness is unbearable: from this day on you shall get up early. I'll see to it. 8. "Be careful that not for one moment shall it be more than half on," said Holmes.

10. *Translate into English. Use the modal verb shall.*

1. Мир должен быть сохранен и упрочен. 2. «Я обещаю, что письмо будет написано и отправлено», — сказала Грейс.

3. «Отец накажет тебя, если ты не перестанешь дразнить сестру»,— пригрозила мать. 4. Мне телеграфировать вам по приезде в Киев? 5. Мне все равно, нравится тебе это или нет, но ты выполнишь свою работу в срок.

11. *Use the modal verbs will, would or shall.*

1. He is so good-humoured and witty, he .. always joke and say something funny. 2. You ... be called to account for your outrageous behaviour. 3. Their church forbade them any entertainments and the parents ... not allow the children even to go to the theatre. 4. After dinner the women ... gather on the terrace for a lazy chat while the men ... go to the sitting-room to talk politics. 5. According to the agreement both sides ... maintain friendly relations with each other and refrain from the use of force. 6. "Your letter ... be returned to you if you accept my terms," she said. 7. "You'll have heaps of opportunity to do what I ask you if you ...," she said. 8. "... I call for you tomorrow?" "Do, please." 9. They waited and waited but the rain ... not stop. 10. "Today you are not well, but tomorrow you ... bathe to your heart's content," Mrs Brown promised Tom.

12. *Answer the following questions.*

1. When was serfdom abolished in England? What do you know about the abolition of serfdom in other countries of Europe and Russia?
2. What rendered the abolition of serfdom in England inevitable?
3. How did it come about that the first English trade colonies were established in the Straits of Dover?
4. In what state of development was English feudalism in the 14th and 15th centuries?
5. Why was the old feudal aristocracy replaced by a new landed aristocracy?
6. Why did the discovery of America and the sea route to India bring more advantage to England than to Spain or Portugal?
7. What was the aim of the piratical wars of English trade companies against Spain? Who suffered most from these wars?
8. What enabled England to defeat Spain in the war that followed?
9. What facts can you cite to prove that the slave trade brought the English bourgeoisie colossal profits?

10. What rivals did England have to struggle against for the monopoly of the slave trade?
11. Why did slave trade cease to develop after the first quarter of the 19th century?
12. When did the bourgeois revolution take place in England?
13. Who was the leading force in that revolution and what strata of the population supported it?
14. What did the bourgeois revolution in England result in?
15. What rendered the Dutch bourgeoisie weaker than the English one?
16. What facts do you know about Oliver Cromwell and his dictatorship?
17. What made the English bourgeoisie turn to winning new territories?
18. What new colonies did England obtain under Cromwell's dictatorship?
19. What was Cromwell's policy as regards Ireland?
20. How did Cromwell dispose of the Levellers and Diggers?
21. When did bourgeois revolutions take place in other countries of Europe?

13. *Retell the text according to the following plan.*

- a) The decay of English feudalism.
- b) England's piratical wars against Spain.
- c) Slave trade and the profits it brought to the English bourgeoisie.
- d) The bourgeois revolution in England.
- e) Cromwell's colonial policy.

14. *Topics for oral and written work.*

1. Give an outline of the history of England.
2. Say what you know about piracy.
3. Speak on the British Empire and the British Commonwealth.

15. *Render in English.*

Жора - фотограф

Шел 1943 год. На одной из улочек белорусского городка Н. появилось многообещающее объявление: «Принимаю заказы на фотографирование. Господа офицеры и сотрудники полиции обслуживаются вне очереди. Качество гарантируется».

После поражения под Сталинградом гестапо решило поднять боевой дух (fighting spirit) своих помощников — местной полиции были выданы фашистские мундиры.

И вот тогда Жора-фотографу сделали заманчивое предложение.

Шеф полиции — пан Каранчук, облаченный в мундир капитана вермахта, как никогда, был любезен:

«Учи, Жорж, работа ответственная: будешь снимать лучших сотрудников полиции. Начинать можно сегодня...»

Жора старался. Как заправский фотограф он шелкал (to click) по нескольку раз, чтобы было из чего выбрать.

Он видел в фотообъективе (an objective) физиономии «лучших» сотрудников полиции. Этот расстрелял семью председателя колхоза. Даже грудное дитя не пожалел. А тот, когда прибыли эсэсовцы, ходил со списком намеченных жертв: сам выгонял на расстрел партизанские семьи.

Часто Жора ловил себя на жгучем желании: эх, сейчас бы гранату!

А тем временем в штабе 27-й партизанской бригады имени Кирова внимательно изучали физиономии предателей (a traitor). Здесь тоже были довольны Жориной работой. В сентябре, после очередного взрыва на электростанции, Георгию Миронову разрешили вернуться в партизанский отряд.

Группа, в составе которой был Георгий Миронов, возвращалась с задания. Идти было далеко, а партизаны уже третьи сутки на ногах. Решили завернуть в деревню Ласки.

И вдруг в хату вбежала встревоженная девушка:

«На околице полицаи!»

Силы были неравными. В схватке погибли почти все, и вот и Георгий упал у старого дуба.

Когда подбежали полицаи, они ахнули. Перед ними, обхватив руками землю, лежал Жора-фотограф.

Тело партизана фашисты бросили в яму в старом парке. Но шефу полиции Каранчуку и в голову не приходило, что это еще не конец, что впереди — расплата.

Осенью 1943 года фронт приблизился к Н. Полицаи кинулись кто куда. Были и такие, что подались в партизанские отряды соседних районов. Расчет был прост: подальше от дому никто не опознает. После войны они притаились.

Но их нашли, узнали. И часто те, кого настигало возмездие (retaliation), даже и не догадывались, что мстит им Георгий Миронов...

В 1947 году из армии демобилизовался старший брат Георгия — Сергей. Полез он как-то на чердак (a garret) отцовской хаты и наткнулся на старый фотоаппарат и ящичек с негативами. Было их больше сотни. Посмотрел на свет — и глазам своим не поверил — на всех полицаи и гитлеровские

офицеры. Свою находку Сергей передал капитану районного отдела Комитета государственной безопасности. Начался поиск предателей...

Где только ни узнавали Жориных «клиентов»! Шефа полиции Каранчука взяли на одной из улиц Минска. Как выяснилось, он сумел пролезть в ряды наступающей Красной армии. Демобилизовался офицером запаса, устроился мастером на завод. Полицая Мироненко, стрелявшего в Георгия, выдало «фото лучшего рыбака», напечатанное в районной газете. Расплата шла по следам фашистских подонков. Лишь одному — палачу полиции Шерешу — удалось уйти от возмездия: он нашел приют в Мюнхене. Все остальные получили по заслугам.

REVISION EXERCISES

Modal Verbs

1. *Translate into Russian.*

1. When speaking about the history of development in Russia one should take into consideration that serfdom in this country was abolished much later than in Europe. 2. In my judgement he should not be charged with this job because of his inexperience. 3. The English did not have to fight long to obtain the monopoly of the slave trade. They undertook a number of piratical raids on the Spanish colonies. 4. Although she had strong rivals England would not give up the struggle for the domination in the Atlantic basin. 5. At first Spain might not have realized that the geographical discoveries were bringing much more advantage to England, already more advanced on the road to capitalism than to the feudal monarchy of Spain. 6. Piracy must have been considered quite normal. Queen Elizabeth I is known to have encouraged it in every possible way. 7. The progressive wing of the army recruited from the peasantry and town poor must have failed to resist Cromwell's dictatorship for they were transported as slaves to the West Indies and America.

2. *Fill in the blanks with a modal verb. Use the correct form of the infinitive in brackets.*

1. Isabel ... (to guess) about Bateman's love for her a long time before he proposed to her. 2. Bateman felt that he ... (to

do) something to help Edward. 3. It never occurred to Galsworthy that Bruce ... (to accept) the money for his skit without any scruples. 4. It was Dominguez who ... (to go) to the Press Conference on that day, but he appeared to have fallen ill, so Fowler ... (to attend) it himself. 5. Dorset ... (to be sure) of his son being returned to him, that is why he refused to pay any ransom. 6. "You ... (not to sign) the letter with your own name if you don't want to," Guy and Ralph assured Grace. "All we want is to have it written in a feminine handwriting." 7. "... Linday (to be) so cruel as to let Rex die?" thought Madge. "I have always known him to be kind and generous. It ... (to be) a bitter blow to him when I left him." 8. "Remember what I have told you," said Mr Heng. "You ... (to know) the truth about Pyle. It ... (to help) you to see who is to blame in case anything should happen in Saigon."

3. *Express a supposition, disbelief, doubt, reproach, surprise or advice in respect to the following statements, using the modal verbs given in brackets.*

Model: It was raining the whole day yesterday. Now it seems to be getting dark again. (can?)
Can it start raining again?

1. He is known to be a man of gay temper, but today he seems gloomy. (must)
2. It is already very late and you look tired. (should)
3. He promised to bring me that book today at last. But I see him coming over there, and he is not carrying anything in his hands. (can?)
4. Why should you be so worried about Johnny? It is not yet really very late. (may)
5. "Why does he keep smiling at everything I am saying?" the old lady thought feeling slightly annoyed. (might)
6. I have already dialled the number twice but nobody is answering my call. (must)
7. "We arranged to meet at the entrance to the underground, but Jane is nowhere to be seen." "By the way, there is another exit across the street, look for her there." (may)
8. When Grace met Ray in the street occasionally she would feel a pang of conscience. "He looks so sad and lonely," she thought. (ought)

4. *Translate into English.*

1. Если бы не островное положение Англии, она, возможно, пострадала бы значительно больше во время второй ми-

ровой войны. 2. Развитие товарных отношений в рамках натурального хозяйства неизбежно должно было привести к отмене крепостного права в нашей стране. 3. Должно быть, Испания и Португалия были самыми богатыми и мощными государствами после первых великих географических открытий. 4. Испания не могла не сопротивляться своему более сильному сопернику. И если бы не Англия, Испания, вероятно, еще долго господствовала бы в Атлантическом океане. 5. Именно буржуазная революция свела последние счета с феодализмом. 6. Кромвель понимал, что ему необходимо было усиливать и развивать английские колонии на восточном побережье Северной Америки. 7. По этому грабительскому торговому соглашению Англия должна была вывозить из этих стран меха, табак, рис, сахар и черных рабов. 8. Разоренные ирландские крестьяне должны были работать на землях, переданных английским помещикам. 9. В результате ожесточенной борьбы феодалам пришлось уступить место новой земельной аристократии. 10. Если бы не огромные прибыли от работорговли, Англия не смогла бы так быстро создать базу для развития промышленного капитала. 11. Именно торговля шерстью явилась первым видом экспортной торговли Англии. 12. Английские феодалы и не подозревали (мало же подозревали), что в рамках их общества уже назревали новые отношения. 13. Именно в 1713 году Англия завоевала монополию на работорговлю. 14. «Я думаю, мне не нужно напоминать вам об огромных прибылях, принесенных работорговлей», — сказал докладчик. 15. Напрасно боролись ирландцы против диктатуры Кромвеля; Ирландия была разбита и разделена на части. 16. Не успел Кромвель прийти к власти, как он сразу же развязал ряд морских войн. 17. Напрасно феодальная аристократия вела борьбу с новой земельной аристократией. Ее поражение было неизбежно.
